

ID&TRUST

IDENTITY APPLLET V4.0/PACE-EAC1 (EMRTD)/
PACE-EAC2 (EIDAS)

ELECTRONIC IDENTITY CARD WITH PACE-GM,
PACE-CAM, EXTENDED ACCESS CONTROL V1
AND V2, RESTRICTED IDENTIFICATION AND ACTIVE
AUTHENTICATION

SECURITY TARGET

COMMON CRITERIA / ISO 15408

EAL5+

2026

Revision history

Version	Date	Information
V1.0	12.01.2026	First release

Table of Contents

1	1. ST INTRODUCTION	8
2	1.1. ST REFERENCE	8
3	1.2. TOE Reference	8
4	1.3. TOE Overview	9
5	1.3.1. TOE TYPE.....	10
6	1.3.2. TOE DEFINITION AND OPERATIONAL USAGE.....	11
7	1.3.3. TOE MAJOR SECURITY FEATURES FOR OPERATIONAL USE	12
8	1.3.4. NON-TOE HARDWARE/SOFTWARE/FIRMWARE.....	12
9	1.4. TOE DESCRIPTION	14
10	1.4.1. PRODUCT TYPE	14
11	1.4.2. COMPONENTS OF THE TOE	15
12	1.4.3. TOE LIFE CYCLE	18
13	1.4.4. TOE SECURITY FUNCTIONS.....	21
14	1.4.5. FEATURES OF THE IDENTITY APPLET.....	21
15	2. CONFORMANCE CLAIMS	31
16	2.1. CC Conformance Claim	31
17	2.2. PP Claim	31
18	2.3. Package Claim	32
19	2.4. Conformance Rationale.....	33
20	2.5. Statement of Compatibility.....	35
21	2.5.1. SECURITY FUNCTIONALITIES.....	35
22	2.5.2. OSPs	36
23	2.5.3. SECURITY OBJECTIVES	36
24	2.5.4. SECURITY REQUIREMENTS	40
25	2.5.5. ASSURANCE REQUIREMENTS.....	50
26	2.6. Analysis.....	51

27	3.	SECURITY PROBLEM DEFINITION.....	52
28	3.1.	Introduction	52
29	3.1.1.	ASSETS.....	52
30	3.1.2.	SUBJECTS	54
31	3.2.	Threats.....	57
32	3.2.1.	THREATS FROM EAC1PP	57
33	3.2.2.	THREATS FROM EAC2PP	57
34	3.2.3.	THREATS FROM PACEPP	58
35	3.3.	Organizational Security Policies	58
36	3.3.1.	OSPs FROM EAC1PP	58
37	3.3.2.	OSPs FROM EAC2PP	58
38	3.3.3.	OSPs FROM PACEPP.....	59
39	3.3.4.	ADDITIONAL OSP.....	59
40	3.4.	Assumptions	60
41	3.4.1.	ASSUMPTIONS FROM EAC1PP	60
42	3.4.2.	ASSUMPTIONS FROM EAC2PP	60
43	3.4.3.	ASSUMPTIONS FROM PACEPP.....	60
44	4.	SECURITY OBJECTIVES	62
45	4.1.	Security Objectives for the TOE	62
46	4.1.1.	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE TOE FROM EAC1PP.....	62
47	4.1.2.	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE TOE EAC2PP	63
48	4.1.3.	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE TOE PACEPP.....	63
49	4.2.	Security Objectives for the Operational Environment.....	64
50	4.2.1.	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FROM EAC1PP	64
51	4.2.2.	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FROM EAC2PP	64
52	4.2.3.	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FROM PACEPP	65
53	4.2.4.	ADDITIONAL SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE ENVIRONMENT.....	65
54	4.3.	Security Objective Rationale	66

55	5.	EXTENDED COMPONENTS DEFINITION	68
56	6.	SECURITY REQUIREMENTS	69
57	6.1.	Security Functional Requirements.....	70
58	6.1.1.	Class FCS.....	70
59	6.1.2.	Class FIA	87
60	6.1.3.	Class FDP	104
61	6.1.4.	Class FTP	112
62	6.1.5.	Class FAU.....	115
63	6.1.6.	Class FMT.....	115
64	6.1.7.	Class FPT	134
65	6.2.	Security Assurance Requirements for the TOE	139
66	6.3.	Security Requirements Rationale	141
67	6.3.1.	Security Functional Requirements Rationale.....	141
68	6.3.2.	Rationale for SFR's Dependencies.....	144
69	6.3.3.	Security Assurance Requirements Rationale	145
70	6.3.4.	Security Requirements – Internal Consistency	146
71	7.	TOE SUMMARY SPECIFICATION	147
72	7.1.	TOE Security Functions	147
73	7.1.1.	TSF.AccessControl	147
74	7.1.2.	TSF.Authenticate	148
75	7.1.3.	TSF.SecureManagement.....	150
76	7.1.4.	TSF.CryptoKey.....	151
77	7.1.5.	TSF.AppletParametersSign.....	152
78	7.1.6.	TSF.Platform.....	152
79	7.2.	Assurance Measures.....	155
80	7.3.	Fulfillment of the SFRs	156
81	7.4.	Correspondence of SFR and TOE mechanisms.....	158
82	8.	GLOSSARY AND ABBREVIATIONS	159

83 9. BIBLIOGRAPHY 160

84

List of Tables

85	• Update Table 1 Mapping of Security requirements	2
86	Table 2 Overview of identifiers of current ST and PPs.....	9
87	Table 3 Identity Applet Suite v4.0 functionalities	10
88	Table 4 Terminals and access control in European Passport	22
89	Table 5 Terminals and access control in Identity Card with Protected MRTD Application.....	25
90	Table 6 Terminals and access control in Identity Card with EU-compliant MRTD Application	
91	28
92	Table 7 Classification of Platform-TSFs.....	36
93	Table 8 Mapping of security objectives for the TOE.....	39
94	Table 9 Mapping of Security requirements	50
95	Table 10 Security Objective Rationale.....	66
96	Table 11 Overview of authentication and identification SFRs	87
97	Table 12 Coverage of Security Objectives for the TOE by SFRs	142
98	Table 13 Assurance measures and corresponding documents.....	155

99 **1. ST INTRODUCTION**

100 This section provides document management and overview information required to register
101 the Security Target (ST) and to enable a potential user of the ST to determine, whether the ST
102 is of interest.

103 **1.1. ST REFERENCE**

104 Title: Security Target ID&Trust IDentity Applet v4.0/PACE-EAC1
105 (eMRTD)/PACE-EAC2 (eIDAS) - Electronic Identity Card with
106 PACE-GM, PACE-CAM, Extended Access Control v1 and v2,
107 Restricted Identification and Active Authentication

108 TOE: IDentity Applet v4.0/PACE-EAC1 (eMRTD)/PACE-EAC2 (eIDAS)
109 on NXP JCOP 4.5 P71

110 Author: ID&Trust Ltd.

111 Version Number: v1.0

112 Date: 12.01.2026

113 **1.2.TOE Reference**

114 The Security Target refers to the product “ID&Trust IDentity Applet Suite v4.0” for CC
115 evaluation.

116 TOE Name: IDentity Applet v4.0/PACE-EAC1 (eMRTD)/PACE-EAC2 (eIDAS)
117 on NXP JCOP 4.5 P71

118 TOE short name: IDentity Applet v4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2

119 TOE Identification

120 Data: IDentity Applet v4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2 v4.0.9219

121 Platform Identification

122 Data

123 Patch ID 0000000000000000

124 ROM ID B3375FE9B5508BC4

125 Build ID 6D20B6197D635E7C
 126 Platform ID J3R6000373181200
 127 Evaluation Criteria: [4]
 128 Evaluation
 129 Assurance Level: EAL5 augmented with ALC_DVS.2 and AVA_VAN.5 as
 130 defined in [3].
 131 Developer: ID&Trust Ltd.
 132 Evaluation Sponsor: NXP Semiconductors Netherlands B.V. 5656, AG Eindhoven, High
 133 Tech Campus 60

134 **1.3.TOE Overview**

135 This ST claims strict conformance to [5], [6] and [13]. There, slightly different terminology is
 136 used. For the ease of understanding, Table 1 gives a brief translation for the used terminology.
 137 Compound words that contain terminology of the table should be replaced accordingly.

This ST	PACE PP [13]	EAC1PP [5]	EAC2PP [6]
electronic document	travel document	travel document	electronic document
electronic document presenter	traveler	traveler	electronic document presenter
EAC1 protected data	-	sensitive (user) data	-
EAC2 protected data	-	-	Sensitive User Data
common user data	user data	user data	common user data
PACE terminal	BIS-PACE	BIS-PACE	PACE terminal
EAC1 terminal	-	Extended Inspection System	-
EAC2 terminal	-	-	EAC2 terminal

138 **Table 1 Overview of identifiers of current ST and PPs**

139 During the current ST development, the ST author considered the structure and rationale of
 140 [21], but do not require strict conformance to it. However, if a QSCD application (e.g., IDentity
 141 Applet v4.0/QSCD) is conditionally presented on the electronic document alongside the current
 142 TOE, then it can be aligned with the product described in [21], including the eSign functionality.
 143 In this case, the QSCD application must possess the appropriate certification regardless of the
 144 current certification.

145 1.3.1. TOE TYPE

146 IDentity Applet Suite v4.0 is a highly configurable eID solution. It is able to satisfy multiple
147 different application requirements even within a single applet instance. The Application part of
148 the TOE, the applet functionalities are distributed according to the following table:

Application	Function	Standard	Protection Profile (certified or in progress)
IDentity Applet/PKI	Flexible PKI token	CEN TS 14890-1/2 IAS-ECC 1.0.1 [31]	-
IDentity Applet /IAS	European card for e-Services and National e-ID applications	CEN/TS 15480- IAS-ECC 1.0.1 [31]	-
IDentity Applet /QSCD	Qualified Signature Creation Device	CEN/TS 15480-2 IAS-ECC 1.0.1 [31] REGULATION (EU) No 910/2014 BSI TR-03117	[14] [15] [16]
IDentity Applet /IDL	International Driving License	ISO/IEC 18013	-
IDentity Applet /EDL	European Driving License	2012/383/EC	-
IDentity Applet /eVR	Electronic Vehicle Registration	1999/37/EC	-
IDentity Applet /eHC	Electronic Health Insurance	CEN/CWA 15794	-
IDentity Applet /BAC	Basic Access Control (BAC)	ICAO Doc 9303 [8]	BSI-CC-PP-0055
IDentity Applet- J	Basic Access Control (BAC) Password Authenticated Connection Establishment (PACE)	ICAO Doc 9303 [8]	JISEC500 [33] JISEC499 [34]
IDentity Applet/PACE-EAC1/EAC2	Password Authenticated Connection Establishment (PACE) Extended Access Control v1 Extended Access Control v2 (EAC2)	ICAO Doc 9303 [8] ICAO TR-SAC [7] BSI TR-03110 v2.21 [17][18][19][20]	BSI-CC-PP-0068-V2-2011 [13] BSI-CC-PP-0056-V2-2012 [5] BSI-CC-PP-0086-2015

149 **Table 2 IDentity Applet Suite v4.0 functionalities**

150 All the functions are supplied by the applet "IDentity Applet Suite v4.0", the behaviour of the
151 applet changes according to the configuration applied during the personalization phase of
152 IDentity Applet life cycle and the environmental behaviour of the usage phase.

153 **The scope of the current ST is only concerned with applet behaviour of configuration**
154 **IDentity Applet/PACE-EAC1/EAC2.**

155 The Target of Evaluation (TOE) is contact or contactless smart card with the IDentity Applet
156 Suite v4.0 configured as IDentity Applet/PACE-EAC1/EAC2. The TOE is applicable as an
157 electronic document (with two applications: ePassport or eID), which compliance to relevant
158 eIDAS standards [17], [18], [19] and provide all necessary security protocols (such as PACE,
159 EAC1, EAC2, etc).

160 1.3.2. TOE DEFINITION AND OPERATIONAL USAGE

161 The Target of Evaluation (TOE) is a smartcard programmed according to [17] [18]. The
162 smartcard contains multiple applications (at least one). The programmed smartcard is called
163 an electronic document as a whole. Here, an application is a collection of data(groups) and
164 their access conditions. We mainly distinguish between common user data, and sensitive user-
165 data. Depending on the protection mechanisms involved, these user data can further be
166 distinguished as follows:

- 167 • *EAC1-protected data*: Sensitive User Data protected by EAC1 (cf. [17]),
- 168 • *EAC2-protected data*: Sensitive User Data protected by EAC2 (cf. [18]), and
- 169 • *all other (common) user data*: Other user data are protected by Password Authenticated
170 Connection Establishment (PACE, cf. also [18]). Note that EAC1 recommends, and EAC2
171 requires prior execution of PACE.

172 The IDentity Applet Suite v4.0 also supports BAC, but this is not part of the current ST; BAC
173 functionality is subject to a separate certification (IDentity Applet v4.0/BAC)

174 In addition to the above user data, there are also data required for TOE security functionality
175 (TSF). Such data is needed to execute the access control protocols, to verify integrity and
176 authenticity of user data, or to generate cryptographic signatures.

177 Application considered in [17] and [18] are

- 178 1. an electronic passport (ePass) application
- 179 2. an electronic identity (eID) application

180 The TOE shall comprise at least:

- 181 1. the circuitry of the chip, including all integrated circuit (IC) dedicated software that is
182 active in the operational phase of the TOE,
- 183 2. the IC embedded software, i.e. the operating system,
- 184 3. all access mechanisms, associated protocols and corresponding data,

- 185 4. one or several applications, and
186 5. the associated guidance documentation.

187 1.3.3. TOE MAJOR SECURITY FEATURES FOR OPERATIONAL USE

188 The following TOE security features are the most significant for its operational use:

189 The TOE ensures that

- 190 • only authenticated terminals can get access to the User Data stored on the TOE and
191 use security functionality of the electronic document according to the access rights of
192 the terminal,
- 193 • the Electronic Document Holder can control access by consciously presenting his
194 electronic document and/or by entering his secret PIN,
- 195 • authenticity and integrity of user data can be verified,
- 196 • confidentiality of user data in the communication channel between the TOE and the
197 connected terminal is provided,
- 198 • inconspicuous tracing of the electronic document is averted,
- 199 • its security functionality and the data stored inside are self-protected, and
200 • Optionally support the Active Authentication and Chip Authentication mapping.

201 1.3.4. NON-TOE HARDWARE/SOFTWARE/FIRMWARE

202 In order to be powered up and to communicate with the external world, the TOE needs a
203 terminal (card reader) supporting the communication according to [12] and [11]; the latter only
204 if the card has a contactless interface. Akin to [17] and [18] the TOE shall be able to recognize
205 the following terminal types:

206 PACE terminal

207 A PACE terminal is a basic inspection system according to [17], [18] resp. It performs the
208 standard inspection procedure, i.e. PACE followed by Passive Authentication, cf. [17].
209 Afterwards user data are read by the terminal. A PACE terminal is allowed to read only
210 common user data.

211 For more information see: PACE Terminal

212 [EAC1 terminal](#)

213 An EAC1 terminal is an extended inspection system according to [17]. It performs the
214 advanced inspection procedure ([17]) using EAC1, i.e. PACE, then Chip Authentication 1
215 followed by Passive Authentication, and finally Terminal Authentication 1. Afterwards user data
216 are read by the terminal. An EAC1 terminal is allowed to read both EAC1 protected data, and
217 common user data.

218 For more information see: [EAC1 Terminal / EAC2 Terminal](#)

219 [EAC2 terminal](#)

220 An EAC2 terminal is an extended inspection system performing the general authentication
221 procedure according to [18] using EAC2, i.e. PACE, then Terminal Authentication 2 followed
222 by Passive Authentication, and finally Chip Authentication 2. Depending on its authorization
223 level, an EAC2 terminal is allowed to read out some or all EAC2 protected Sensitive User Data,
224 and common user data.

225 For more information see: [EAC1 Terminal / EAC2 Terminal](#)

226 In general, the authorization level of a terminal is determined by the effective terminal
227 authorization. The authorization is calculated from the certificate chain presented by the
228 terminal to the TOE. It is based on the Certificate Holder Authorization Template (CHAT). A
229 CHAT is calculated as an AND-operation from the certificate chain of the terminal and the
230 electronic document presenter's restricting input at the terminal. The final CHAT reflects the
231 effective authorization level and is then sent to the TOE [19]. For the access rights, cf. also the
232 SFR component FDP_ACF.1/TRM in Chapter 6.1.3.

233 All necessary certificates of the related public key infrastructure – Country Verifying
234 Certification Authority (CVCA) Link Certificates, Document Verifiers Certificates and Terminal
235 Certificates – must be available in the card verifiable format defined in [19].

236 The term terminal within this ST usually refers to any kind of terminal, if not explicitly mentioned
237 otherwise.

238 The current TOE knows three different configuration as described in 1.4.5 Features of the
239 IDentity Applet. According to the each configuration the following tables give an overview which
240 of the above terminals are related to what application, and which data group is accessible.

241 *European Passport configuration*

Terminal/Application	ePassport	eID
PACE terminal	Common user data	n.a.
EAC1 terminal	Common user data and EAC1 protected data	n.a.
EAC2 terminal	none	n.a.

242 *Identity Card with Protected MRTD Application configuration*

Terminal/Application	ePassport	eID
PACE terminal	none	none
EAC1 terminal	none	none
EAC2 terminal	Common user data EAC2 protected data	Common user data EAC2 protected data

243 *Identity Card with EU-compliant MRTD Application configuration*

Terminal/Application	ePassport	eID
PACE terminal	Common user data	None
EAC1 terminal	Common user data and EAC1 protected data	None
EAC2 terminal	none	common user data EAC2 protected data

244 Other terminals than the above are out of scope of this ST. In particular, terminals using Basic
 245 Access Control (BAC) may be functionally supported by the electronic document, but if the
 246 TOE is operated using BAC, it is not in a certified mode.

247 **1.4. TOE DESCRIPTION**

248 **1.4.1. PRODUCT TYPE**

249 The TOE type addressed by the current ST is a smartcard programmed according to [17] and
 250 [18]. The smartcard contains IDentity Applet V4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2, which may be contain
 251 multiple applications (at least one). The smartcard with IDentity Applet V4.0/PACE-
 252 EAC1/EAC2 is called an electronic document as a whole.

253 **Justification:** TOE type definitions of the claimed PPs ([5], [6],) differ slightly. We argue that
 254 these differences do not violate consistency:

255 The TOE type defined both in [5] and [6] is a smartcard. Whereas [5] references [17] (and also
 256 [8] and related ICAO specifications, however [17] is fully compatible with those ICAO
 257 specifications, and they are mostly listed there for the sake of completeness and the context
 258 of use) w.r.t. programming of the card, [18] is given as a reference in [6]. Reference [17] defines
 259 the EAC1 protocol, whereas EAC2 is defined in [18]. Thus, this difference in reference is
 260 introduced just due to different applications on the card, that do not contradict each other. The

261 term 'travel document' of [5] is here understood in a more broader sense (cf. also Table 1),
262 since the document can also be used in contexts other than just traveling.

263 The typical life cycle phases for the current TOE type are development, manufacturing, card
264 issuing and operational use. The life cycle phase development includes development of the IC
265 itself and IC embedded software. Manufacturing includes IC manufacturing and smart card
266 manufacturing, and installation of a card operating system. Card issuing includes installation
267 of the smart card applications and their electronic personalization, i. e. tying the application
268 data up to the Electronic Document Holder.

269 Operational use of the TOE is explicitly in the focus of [6]. Some single properties of the
270 manufacturing and the card issuing life cycle phases that are significant for the security of the
271 TOE in its operational phase are also considered by the current ST. Conformance with [6]
272 requires that all life cycle phases are considered to the extent that is required by the assurance
273 package chosen here for the TOE; c.f. also chapter 6.2

274 1.4.2. COMPONENTS OF THE TOE

275 **Micro Controller**

276 The Micro Controller is a secure smart card controller from NXP from the SmartMX3 family.
277 The Micro Controller contains a co-processor for symmetric cipher, supporting DES operations
278 and AES, as well as an accelerator for asymmetric algorithms. The Micro Controller further
279 contains a physical random number generator. The supported memory technologies are
280 volatile (Random Access Memory (RAM)) and non-volatile (Read Only Memory (ROM) and
281 FLASH) memory. Access to all memory types is controlled by a Memory Management Unit
282 (MMU) which allows to separate and restrict access to parts of the memory.

283 **IC dedicated software – Micro Controller Firmware**

284 The Micro Controller Firmware is used for testing of the Micro Controller at production, for
285 booting of the Micro Controller after power-up or after reset, for configuration of communication
286 devices and for writing data to non-volatile memory.

287 **IC dedicated software – Crypto Library**

288 The Crypto Library provides implementations for symmetric and asymmetric cryptographic
289 operations, hashing, the generation of hybrid deterministic and hybrid physical random
290 numbers and further tools like secure copy and compare. The supported asymmetric
291 cryptographic operations are ECC and RSA. These algorithms use the Public Key Crypto
292 Coprocessor (PKCC) of the Micro Controller for the cryptographic operations.

293 Micro Controller, IC dedicated software (Micro Controller Firmware, Crypto Library) are
294 covered by the following certification:

295 Certification ID: BSI-DSZ-CC-1149-V4-2025

296 Evaluation level: EAL6+ ALC_FLR.1 and ASE_TSS.2 according to Security IC Platform
297 Protection Profile with Augmentation Packages Version 1.0, 13 January
298 2014, BSI-CC-00084-2014.

299 **IC Embedded Software**

300 Certification ID: NSCIB-CC-2300127-02

301 JCOP 4.5 consists of Java Card Virtual Machine (JCVM), Java Card Runtime Environment
302 (JCRE), Java Card API (JCAPI), Global Platform (GP) framework, Configuration Module, etc.

303 OS Name: JCOP 4.5 Operating System

304 Applied OS
305 configuration: SECID

306
307 Product
308 Identification: Platform ID = J3R6000373181200

309 ROM ID = B3375FE9B5508BC4

310
311
312 Evaluation Level: CC EAL 6+ with ASE_TSS.2, ALC_FLR.1 according to Java Card
313 System – Open Configuration Protection Profile, version 3.0.5, Certified
314 by Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI, BSI-CC-
315 PP-0099-2017).

316 Platform UGD: [25]

317 **ID&Trust IDentity Applet Suite – accomplishing IDentity Applet V4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2**

318 Product name: ID&Trust IDentity Applet Suite

319 Version: 4.0

320 Applet name¹: IDentity Applet V4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2

321 TOE Guidance
322 Documentation: ² IDentity Applet Administrator’s Guide [22]

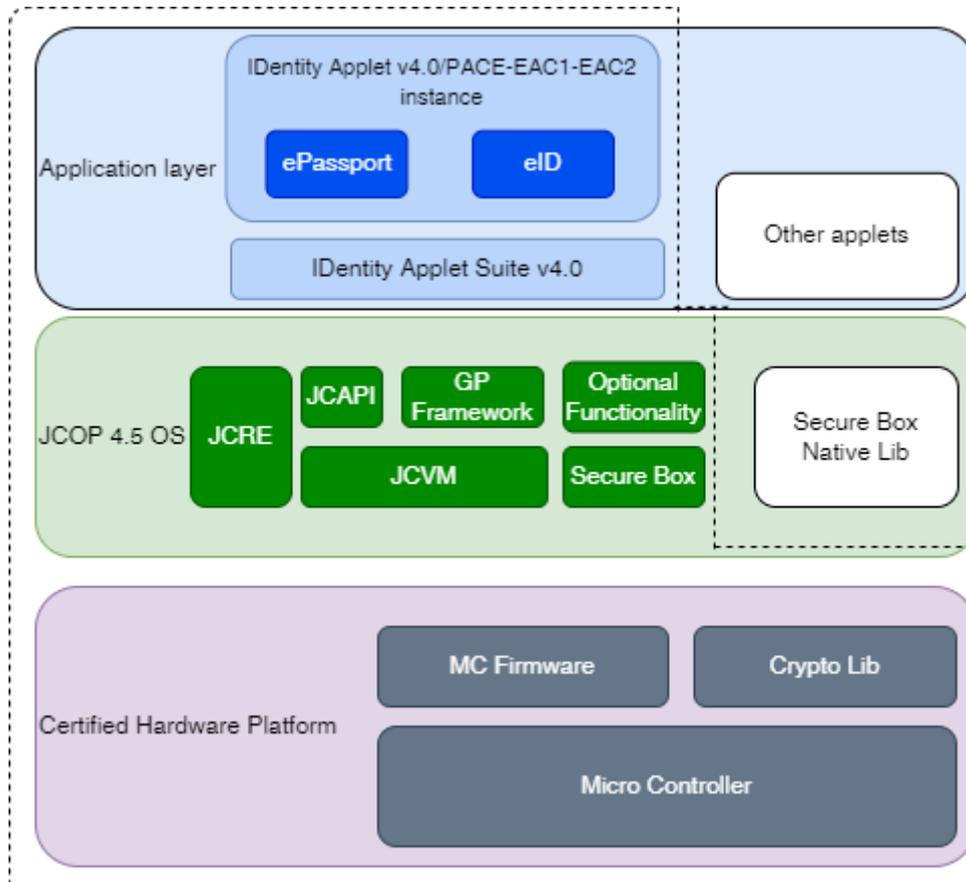
¹ The applet is provided in cap file format.

² The AGD documents provided in electronic document format.

323 IDentity Applet User’s Guide [23]

324 The composite part always means IDentity Applet V4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2

325 The logical architecture of the TOE:



326

327

1. Figure TOE Boundaries

328 The TOE is a composite TOE, with the dashed line indicating the whole TOE. The certified
329 hardware platform and JCOP 4.5 OS, denoted by purple and green. Within this ST the joint
330 reference for certified hardware platform and JCOP 4.5 OS is referred to as the Platform.

331 The application layer is highlighted in the blue box marks. The ID&Trust IDentity Applet Suite
332 v4.0 can be loaded in the Flash. During the creation phase, an instance is created in the Flash
333 and following several configuration steps it will be personalized as IDentity Applet V4.0/PACE-
334 EAC1/EAC2. For a more in depth understanding please refer to Section 1.4.3 TOE life cycle
335 and [24].

336 Boxes depicted in white are indicative of components that have not undergone certification.

337 1.4.3. TOE LIFE CYCLE

338 The TOE life cycle is described in terms of the above-mentioned four life cycle phases. Akin
339 to [10], the TOE life-cycle is additionally subdivided into six steps.

340 **Phase 1: Development**341 *Step 1*

342 The TOE is developed in phase 1. NXP develops the integrated circuit, the IC dedicated
343 software and the guidance documentation associated with these TOE components.

344 *Step 2*

345 The software developer uses the guidance documentation for the integrated circuit and the
346 guidance documentation for relevant parts of the IC dedicated software, and develops the IC
347 embedded software (operating system), the electronic document application(s) and the
348 guidance documentation associated with these TOE components. The operating system is
349 developed by NXP as well. The IDentity Applet V4.0 is developed by ID&Trust Ltd.

350 In the present Security Target, there are two distinct entities responsible for software
351 development: NXP and ID&Trust. NXP has developed the Common Criteria Certified Platform,
352 the IC Embedded Software (Operating System), and the IC Dedicated Software (cryptographic
353 library). On the other hand, ID&Trust is responsible for developing the IDentity Applet/PACE-
354 EAC1/EAC2, which implements the electronic document (ePP and eID) functionality.

355 The manufacturing documentation of the IC including the IC dedicated software and the
356 embedded software in the non-volatile non-programmable memories is securely delivered to
357 the IC manufacturer. The IC embedded software in the non-volatile programmable memories,
358 the application(s), and the guidance documentation is securely delivered to the electronic
359 document manufacturer.

360 The delivery procedures between ID&Trust (applet developer) and the manufacturer (NXP):

- 361 1. The IDentity Applet Developer develops a new version of the ID&Trust IDentity Applet
362 V4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2.
- 363 2. After the new version is tested a new release is issued and stored in configuration
364 management system.

365 3. The new version of the IDentity Applet V4.0/PACE-EAC1/EAC2 is sent to as required
366 by [25].

367 **Phase 2: Manufacturing**

368 *Step 3*

369 In a first step, the TOE integrated circuit is produced. The circuit contains the electronic
370 document's chip dedicated software, and the parts of the electronic document's chip
371 embedded software in the non-volatile non-programmable memory (ROM). The IC
372 manufacturer writes IC identification data onto the chip in order to track and control the IC as
373 dedicated electronic document material during IC manufacturing, and during delivery to the
374 electronic document manufacturer. The IC is securely delivered from the IC manufacturer to
375 the electronic document manufacturer. If necessary, the IC manufacturer adds parts of the IC
376 embedded software in the non-volatile programmable memory, e. g. EEPROM or in FLASH.

377

378 *Step 4*

379 The NXP

- 380 1. adds the IC embedded software in the non-volatile programmable memories, e. g.
381 EEPROM or FLASH,
- 382 2. loads the application(s), and
- 383 3. equips the electronic document's chip with pre-personalization data.

384 **Application note 1 (from ST author):**

385 The IC (wafer) is placed into the inlay by the inlay provider (in the case of a contact interface,
386 implantation is performed) and is then forwarded in this form to the electronic document
387 manufacturer. Throughout the process, the TOE remains in a protected state.

388 Loading of the application(s) implies the creation of the master file (MF), dedicated files (DFs),
389 and elementary files (EFs) according to [12]. How this process is handled internally depends
390 on the IC and IC embedded software.

391 The pre-personalized electronic document together with the IC identifier is securely delivered
392 from the electronic document manufacturer to the Personalization Agent. The electronic

393 document manufacturer also provides the relevant parts of the guidance documentation to the
394 Personalization Agent.

395 Creating of the application(s) involves the creation of the master file (MF), dedicated files
396 (DFs), and elementary files (EFs) defined in [12]. This process is managed by the
397 Personalisation Agent.

398 **Phase 3: Personalization of the Electronic Document**

399 *Step 5*

400 The personalization of the electronic document includes

- 401 1. the survey of the Electronic Document Holder's biographical data,
- 402 2. the enrollment of the Electronic Document Holder's biometric reference data, such as
403 a digitized portrait or other biometric reference data,
- 404 3. printing the visual readable data onto the physical part of the electronic document, and
405 4. configuration of the TSF, if necessary.

406 Configuration of the TSF is performed by the Personalization Agent and includes, but is not
407 limited to, the creation of the digitized version of the textual, printed data, the digitized version
408 of e.g. a portrait, or a cryptographic signature of a cryptographic hash of the data that are
409 stored on the chip. The personalized electronic document, if required together with appropriate
410 guidance for TOE use, is handed over to the Electronic Document Holder for operational use.

411 **2. Application note (from ST author)**

412 TSF data are data for the operation of the TOE upon which the enforcement of the SFRs relies
413 [1]. Here TSF data include, but are not limited to, the Personalization Agent's authentication
414 key(s).

415 **Phase 4: Operational Use**

416 *Step 6*

417 The chip of the TOE is used by the electronic document and terminals that verify the chip's
418 data during the phase operational use. The user data can be read and modified according to
419 the security policy of the issuer.

420 1.4.4. TOE SECURITY FUNCTIONS

TSF	Description
TSF.AccessControl	The TOE enforces access control in order to ensure only for authorised users to access User Data and TSF-data and maintains different security roles.
TSF.Authenticate	The TOE supports several authentication mechanisms in order to authenticate the Users, Terminals and to prove the genuineness of the electronic document. The supported mechanism and protocols are based on ICAO and BSI standards [7], [8], [17], [18] and [19].
TSF.SecureManagement	The TOE enforces the secure management of the security attributes, data and functions. Furthermore the TOE restricts the available commands in each TOE life-cycle phase.
TSF.CryptoKey	The TOE uses several cryptographic services such as digital signature creation and verification, asymmetric and symmetric cryptography, random number generation and complete key management.
TSF.AppletParametersSign	The TOE enforces the integrity of itself in each life cycle phases.
TSF.Platform	The TOE relies on the certified functions and services of the Platform. This TSF is collection of those SFRs, which are uses these functions and services.

421 1.4.5. FEATURES OF THE IDENTITY APPLLET

422 The current ST makes distinct the following configuration:

- 423 • European Passport
- 424 • Identity Card with Protected MRTD Application
- 425 • Identity Card with EU-compliant MRTD Application

426 **1.4.5.1. European Passport**

427 Passwords

- 428 • MRZ [17]
- 429 • CAN [17]

430 Authentication Procedure

431 This configuration requires implementation t the following Authentication Procedure for access
432 to DG3 and DG4 (Sensitive User Data) of the ePassport Application:

- 433 • Advanced Inspection procedure [17]

434 Applications

- 435 • ePassport Application

436 Protocols

- 437 • PACE (Generic Mapping, Integrated Mapping and Chip Authentication Mapping) [9],
- 438 [17]
- 439 • Active Authentication [7] (optionally)
- 440 • EAC1 [17]
- 441 ○ Terminal Authentication version 1 [17]
- 442 ○ Chip Authentication version 1 [17]

443 Data Groups

444 According to [17].

445 Data types in:

- 446 • Common user data: All DG, which require only BAC/PACE protocol
- 447 • EAC1 protected data: All DG, which require EAC1 protocol

448 The authorization level of EAC1 terminal is determined by the effective authorization calculated
449 by from the certificate chain.

450 Terminals and access control

Data types	PACE terminal	EAC1 terminal	EAC2 terminal
common user data	X	X	-
EAC1 protected data	-	X	-

451 [Table 3 Terminals and access control in European Passport](#)

452 Security Functional Requirements

TOE SFR / Application	ePas spor t
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP	-
FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP	-
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP	-
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP	-
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP	-
FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP	-
FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP	-
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP	X
FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP	X
FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP	X
FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP	X
FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP	X
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP	X
FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP	X

FCS_CKM.1/CA2	-
FCS_CKM.1/RI	-
FCS_CKM.1/AA	X
FCS_COP.1/AA	X
FCS_CKM.1/CAM	X
FCS_COP.1/CAM	X
FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP	X
FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP	X
FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	-
FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP	-
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP	-
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	X
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP	X
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1PP	X
FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP	X
FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	X
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	X
FIA_API.1/AA	X
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-
FDP_ACF.1/TRM	X
FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP	-
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP	X
FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP	X
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	X
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	X
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-
FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP	-
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X
FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP	-
FAU_SAS.1/EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP	-
FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP	-
FMT_SMR.1	X
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP	-

FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP	-
FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP	-
FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP	-
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP	-
FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP	X
FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP	X
FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP	X
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	X
FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP	-
FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP	-
FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP	-
FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP	-
FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP	X
FPT_FLS.1/EAC1PP	X
FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP	X
FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP	X

453 **1.4.5.2. Identity Card with Protected MRTD Application**

454 Passwords

- 455 • MRZ [17]
- 456 • CAN [17]
- 457 • PIN [18]
- 458 • PUK [18]

459 **Authentication Procedure**

460 This configuration requires implementation at the following Authentication Procedure for
461 access any User Data stored on the TOE:

- 462 • General Authentication Procedure [18]

463 Applications

- 464 • ePassport Application
- 465 • eID Application

466 **Protocols**

- 467 • PACE (Generic Mapping, Integrated Mapping) [18]
- 468 • EAC2 [18]
 - 469 ○ Terminal Authentication version 2 [18]
 - 470 ○ Chip Authentication version 2 [18]
- 471 • Restricted Identification [18]

472 **Data Groups**

473 According to [18].

474 According to [9] and [17].

475 Data type in:

- 476 • EAC2 protected data: All DG in ePassport and eID application.

477 The authorization level of EAC2 terminal is determined by the effective authorization calculated
478 by from the certificate chain.

479 **Terminals and access control**

Data type	PACE terminal	EAC1 terminal	EAC2 terminal
Common user data	-	-	X
EAC2 protected data	-	-	X

480 **Table 4 Terminals and access control in Identity Card with Protected MRTD Application**

TOE SFR / Application	ePassport	eID
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP	X	X
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP	X	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP	X	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP	X	X
FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP	X	X
FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_CKM.1/CA2	X	X
FCS_CKM.1/RI	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/AA	-	-

FCS_COP.1/AA	-	-
FCS_CKM.1/CAM	-	-
FCS_COP.1/CAM	-	-
FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP	-	-
FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	-	-
FIA_API.1/AA	-	-
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP	X	X
FDP_ACF.1/TRM	X	X
FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	X	X
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	X	X
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP	-	-
FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	-	-
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	-	-
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X
FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP	X	X
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-
FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FAU_SAS.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_SMR.1	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP	X	X

FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP	X	X
FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	-	-
FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP	X	X
FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP	X	X
FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FPT_FLS.1/EAC1PP	-	-
FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP	-	-
FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP	-	-

481 **1.4.5.3. Identity Card with EU-compliant MRTD Application**

482 Passwords

- 483 • MRZ [17]
- 484 • CAN [17]
- 485 • PIN [18]
- 486 • PUK [18]

487 Authentication Procedure

488 This configuration requires implementation at the following Authentication Procedure for
489 access to non-sensitive user data of the ePassport Application:

- 490 • Advanced Inspection Procedure [17]

491 This configuration requires implementation of the following Authentication Procedure for
492 access any further User Data stored on the TOE:

- 493 • General Authentication Procedure [18]

494 Applications

- 495 • ePassport Application

- 496 • eID Application

497 **Protocols**

- 498 • PACE (Generic Mapping, Integrated Mapping and Chip Authentication Mapping) [9]
499 [17] and [18]
- 500 • Active Authentication [7] (optionally)
- 501 • EAC1 [17]
 - 502 ○ Terminal Authentication version 1 [17]
 - 503 ○ Chip Authentication version 1 [17]
- 504 • EAC2 [18]
 - 505 ○ Terminal Authentication version 2 [18]
 - 506 ○ Chip Authentication version 2 [18]
- 507 • Restricted Identification [18]

508 **Data Groups**

509 According to [18].

510 Data types in Table 5 Terminals and access control in Identity Card with EU-compliant MRTD
511 Application:

- 512 • Common user data: All DG, which require only BAC/PACE protocol in ePassport;
- 513 • EAC1 protected data: All DG, which require EAC1 protocol in ePassport;
- 514 • EAC2 protected data: All DG in eID.

515 The authorization level of EAC1 and EAC2 terminals are determined by the effective
516 authorization calculated by from the certificate chain.

517 **Terminals and access control**

Data types	PACE terminal	EAC1 terminal	EAC2 terminal
Common user data	X	X	X
EAC1 protected data	-	X	-
EAC2 protected data	-	-	X

518 **Table 5 Terminals and access control in Identity Card with EU-compliant MRTD Application**

TOE SFR / Application	ePassport	eID
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP	-	X
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP	-	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP	-	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP	-	X
FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP	-	X
FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP	X	-
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP	X	-
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP	X	-
FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP	-	-
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP	X	-
FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP	X	-
FCS_CKM.1/CA2	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/RI	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/AA	X	-
FCS_COP.1/AA	X	-
FCS_CKM.1/CAM	X	-
FCS_COP.1/CAM	X	-
FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X
FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP	X	-
FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	X	-
FIA_API.1/AA	X	-
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-	X
FDP_ACF.1/TRM	X	X
FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-	X
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-	X

FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP	X	-
FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	X	-
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	X	-
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X
FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP	-	X
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X	-
FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FAU_SAS.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_SMR.1	X	X
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP	-	X
FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP	X	-
FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	X	-
FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP	-	X
FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP	-	X
FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FPT_FLS.1/EAC1PP	X	-
FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP	X	-
FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP	X	-

520 **2. CONFORMANCE CLAIMS**521 **2.1.CC Conformance Claim**

522 This ST claims conformance to

- 523 • Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 1: Introduction
524 and general model; CCMB-2017-04-001, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017, [1]
- 525 • Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 2: Security
526 functional components; CCMB-2017-04-002, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017, [2]
- 527 • Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 3: Security
528 assurance components; CCMB-2017-04-003, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017, [3]

529 as follows

- 530 • Part 2 extended,
- 531 • Part 3 conformant.

532 The

- 533 • Common Methodology for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Evaluation
534 methodology; CCMB-2017-04-004, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017, [4]

535 has to be taken into account.

536 **2.2.PP Claim**537 This ST claims **strict conformance** to the following protection profiles:

538 **Title:** **Machine Readable Travel Document with „ICAO Application”,**
539 **Extended Access Control with PACE (EAC PP) [5]**

540 **Sponsor:** Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik

541 **CC Version:** 3.1 (revision 3)

542 **Assurance Level:** EAL4 augmented with ALC_DVS.2, ATE_DPT.2 and AVA_VAN.5

543 **General Status:** Final

544 **Version number:** version 1.3.2

545 **Registration:** BSI-CC-PP-0056-V2-2012

546 Keywords: ICAO, Machine Readable Travel Document, Extended Access Control,
547 PACE, Supplemental Access Control (SAC)

548

549 **Title: Common Criteria Protection Profile Electronic Document**
550 **implementing Extended Access Control Version 2 defined in BSI**
551 **TR-03110 [6]**

552 Editor/Sponsor: Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI)

553 CC Version: 3.1 (Revision 4)

554 Assurance Level: EAL4 augmented ALC_DVS.2, ATE_DPT.2 and AVA_VAN.5.

555 General Status: final

556 Version Number: Version 1.01

557 Registration: BSI-CC-PP-0086

558 Keywords: EAC2, eID-Application, eID-Card, PACE

559 Since [5] and [6] claim strict conformance to [13], this ST implicitly also claims **strict**
560 **conformance** to

561 **Title: Machine Readable Travel Document using Standard Inspection**
562 **Procedure with PACE (PACE PP) [13]**

563 Sponsor: Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik

564 CC Version: 3.1 (revision 4)

565 Assurance Level: EAL4 augmented with ALC_DVS.2, ATE_DPT.2 and AVA_VAN.5

566 General Status: Final

567 Version number: Version 1.01

568 Registration: BSI-CC-PP-0068-V2-2011-MA-01

569 Keywords: ePassport, travel document, ICAO, PACE, Standard Inspection
570 Procedure, Supplemental Access Control (SAC)

571

572 However since [5] and [6] already claim strict conformance to [13], this implicit conformance
573 claim is formally mostly ignored within this ST for the sake of presentation; but if necessary to
574 yield a better overview however, references to [13] are given or the relation with [13] is
575 explained.

576 **2.3.Package Claim**

577 The current ST is conformant to the following packages:

578 Assurance package EAL5 augmented with ALC_DVS.2 and AVA_VAN.5 as defined in [3].

579 2.4.Conformance Rationale

580 This ST conforms to the PPs [5] and [6]. This implies for this ST:

581 1. The TOE type of this ST is the same as the TOE type of the claimed PPs:

582 The Target of Evaluation (TOE) is an electronic document implemented as a smart
583 card programmed according to [17] and [18].

584 2. The security problem definition (SPD) of this ST contains the SPD of the claimed PPs.
585 The SPD contains all threats, organizational security policies and assumptions of the
586 claimed PPs.

587 The current ST extended the OSP **P.Terminal** because of the optional Active
588 Authentication function of TOE.

589 3. The security objectives for the TOE in this ST include all the security objectives for the
590 TOE of the claimed PPs. This objective does not weaken the security objectives of the
591 claimed PPs.

592 In addition, the OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM security objective is defined in the
593 ST because of the Chip Authentication mapping and OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA
594 because of the Active Authentication protocol.

595 4. The security objectives for the operational environment in this ST include all security
596 objectives for the operational environment of the claimed PPs.

597 In addition the OE.Auth_Key_AA and OE.Exam_Electronic_Document_AA security
598 objectives are defined in the ST because of the Active Authentication protocol. These
599 additions were necessary because none of the original security objectives for the TOE
600 or OSPs do not concern the obligations of States or Organization in connection with
601 Active Authentication protocol.

602 5. Those SFR, which are refined in order to ensure the unified terminology usage, are not
603 detailed in the following.

604 The SFRs specified in this ST include all security functional requirements (SFRs)
605 specified in the claimed PPs. We especially point to the following three refined SFRs:

606 Multiple iterations of FDP_ACF.1 and FMT_SMR.1 exist from imported PPs to define
607 the access control SFPs and security roles for (common) user data, EAC1-protected
608 user data, and EAC2-protected user data. These access control SFPs and security
609 roles are unified to FDP_ACF.1/TRM and FMT_SMR.1.

610 The following SFRs were iterated from FCS_CKM.1, FCS_COP.1 and FIA_API.1 to
611 the ST because of PACE-CAM:

- 612 • FCS_CKM.1/CAM
- 613 • FCS_COP.1/CAM
- 614 • FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM
- 615 The following SFR was extended to the ST because of PACE-CAM:
- 616 • FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP
- 617 The following SFRs were refined to the ST because of PACE-CAM:
- 618 • FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP
- 619 • FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP
- 620 The following SFRs were iterated from FCS_CKM.1, FCS_COP.1, FIA_API.1 and
- 621 FMT_MTD.1 to the ST because of Active Authentication protocol:
- 622 • FCS_CKM.1/AA
- 623 • FCS_COP.1/AA
- 624 • FIA_API.1/AA
- 625 • FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key
- 626 The following SFRs was extended to the ST because of Active Authentication protocol:
- 627 • FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP
- 628 • FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP
- 629 The following SFRs were refined to the ST because of Active Authentication protocol:
- 630 • FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP
- 631 • FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP
- 632 The following SFRs are iterated from FCS_CKM.1 because the TOE supports the Chip
- 633 Authentication version 2 and Restricted Identification key pair(s) generation on the TOE
- 634 as described in FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP. Furthermore, these SFRs were
- 635 refined to emphasize the purpose of the SFRs:
- 636 • FCS_CKM.1/CA2
- 637 • FCS_CKM.1/RI
- 638 The following SFR is refined because the electronic document manufacturer may
- 639 generate or load the private keys:
- 640 • FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP
- 641 The following SFR is slightly refined in order not to confuse Chip Authentication 1 with
- 642 Chip Authentication 2:
- 643 • FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP

- 644 These additional SFRs do not affect the strict conformance. All assignments and selections of
- 645 the security functional requirements are defined in the [6] section 6.1 and in this ST Security
- 646 Functional Requirements.

647 The extension of the OSP **P.Terminal** do not affect the strict conformance because it do not
648 modify the original requirements only added new requirements concern the Active
649 Authentication protocol.

650 The SARs specified in this ST are the same as specified in the claimed PPs or extend them.

651 2.5.Statement of Compatibility

652 2.5.1. SECURITY FUNCTIONALITIES

653 The following table contains the security functionalities of the [24] and of current ST, showing
654 which Functionality correspond to the [24] and which has no correspondence. This statement
655 is compliant to the requirements of [26].

656 A classification of SFs of the [24] has been made. Each TSF has been classified as 'relevant'
657 or 'not relevant' for current ST.

Platform Security Functionality	Corresponding TOE Security Functionality	Relevant or not relevant	Remarks
SF.JCVM	TSF.Platform	Relevant	Java Card Virtual Machine
SF.CONFIG	TSF.Platform	Relevant	Configuration Management
SF.OPEN	TSF.AccessControl TSF.Authenticate TSF.Platform	Relevant	Card Content Management
SF.CRYPTO	TSF.AppletParametersSi gn TSF.Authenticate TSF.CryptoKey TSF.Platform	Relevant	Cryptographic Functionality
SF.RNG	TSF.CryptoKey TSF.Platform	Relevant	Random Number Generator
SF.DATA_STORAGE	TSF.AccessControl TSF.AppletParametersSi gn TSF.CryptoKey TSF.Platform	Relevant	Secure Data Storage
SF.PUF	-	Relevant	User Data Protection using PUF
SF.OM	TSF.Platform	Relevant	Java Object Management
SF.MM	-	Not relevant	Memory Management
SF.PIN	TSF.AppletParametersSi gn	Relevant	PIN Management

Platform Security Functionality	Corresponding TOE Security Functionality	Relevant or not relevant	Remarks
	TSF.Authenticate		
SF.BIO	-	Not relevant	Biometric Template Management
SF.PERS_MEM	TSF.Platform	Relevant	Persistent Memory Management
SF.EDC	TSF.Platform	Relevant	Error Detection Code API
SF.HW_EXC	TSF.Platform	Relevant	Hardware Exception Handling
SF.RM	-	Not relevant	Restricted Mode
SF.PID	-	Not relevant	Platform Identification
SF.SMG_NSC	TSF.Platform	Relevant	No Side-Channel
SF.ACC_SBX	-	Not relevant	Secure Box
SF.MOD_INVOC	-	Not relevant	Module Invocation
SF.SENS_RES	-	Not relevant	Sensitive Result
SF.OSU	-	Not relevant	OS Update
SF.MOD_DEL	-	Not relevant	Module Deletion

658 **Table 6 Classification of Platform-TSFs**

659 All the above SFs of [24], which are indicated as relevant are relevant for this ST.

660 **2.5.2. OSPs**

661 P.Card_PKI, P.Trustworthy_PKI, P.Terminal, P.Sensitive_Data, P.Personalisation,
662 P.EAC2_Terminal, P.RestrictedIdentity and P.Terminal_PKI are not applicable to the Platform
663 and therefore not mappable for [24].

664 The OSP.VERIFICATION, OSP.PROCESS-TOE, OSP.KEY-CHANGE are covered by the
665 ALC class, furthermore P.Manufact and P.Pre-Operational correspond to these OSPs.

666 OSP.SECURE-BOX and OSP.SECURITY-DOMAINS do not deal with any additional security
667 components.

668 **2.5.3. SECURITY OBJECTIVES**

669 These objectives from [24] can be mapped to this ST's objectives as shown in the following
670 table, so they are relevant.

Objective from the Platform ST	Objective from this ST
OT.ALARM	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Phys-Tamper
OT.CARD-CONFIGURATION	OT.Prot_Abuse-Func

OT.CARD-MANAGEMENT	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Identification
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
	OT.AC_PERS_EAC2
OT.CIPHER	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Active_Auth_Proof
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM
	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
	OT.CA2
OT.COMM_AUTH	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM
	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Identification
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
	OT.Tracing
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
	OT.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY
OT.Chip_Auth_Proof	
OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM	
OT.Data_Authenticity	
OT.Data_Confidentiality	
OT.Data_Integrity	
OT.Identification	
OT.Sens_Data_Conf	
OT.Tracing	
OT.RI_EAC2	
OT.Sens_Data_EAC2	
OT.COMM_INTEGRITY	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM
	OT.Data_Authenticity

	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Identification
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
	OT.Tracing
	OT.RI_EAC2
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
OT.DOMAIN-RIGHTS	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Identification
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
OT.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_CONFID	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
OT.TOE_IDENTIFICATION	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Identification
OT.KEY-MNGT	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM
	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Malfunction
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
	OT.CA2
	OT.RI_EAC2
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
OT.OPERATE	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Malfunction
	OT.Prot_Phys-Tamper
OT.PIN-MNGT	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Malfunction
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
OT.REALLOCATION	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
OT.RESOURCES	OT.Data_Integrity

	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Phys-Tamper
OT.RND	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
OT.SCP.IC	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Phys-Tamper
OT.SCP.RECOVERY	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Phys-Tamper
OT.SCP.SUPPORT	OT.AC_Pers
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof
	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM
	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Sens_Data_Conf
	OT.Tracing
	OT.CA2
	OT.RI_EAC2
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2
OT.SID_MODULE	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak
	OT.Prot_Malfunction
OT.TRANSACTION	OT.Data_Authenticity
	OT.Data_Confidentiality
	OT.Data_Integrity
	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2

Table 7 Mapping of security objectives for the TOE

671

672 The following objectives of [24] are not relevant for or cannot be mapped to the TOE of this
673 ST:

- 674 • OT.APPLI-AUTH
- 675 • OT.AUTH-LOAD-UPDATE-IMAGE
- 676 • OT.BIO-MNGT
- 677 • OT.CONFID-UPDATE-IMAGE.LOAD
- 678 • OT.FIREWALL
- 679 • OT.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_INTEG
- 680 • OT.NATIVE
- 681 • OT.OBJ-DELETION
- 682 • OT.SEC_BOX_FW
- 683 • OT.SECURE_ACTIVATION_ADDITIONAL_CODE
- 684 • OT.SECURE_LOAD_ACODE
- 685 • OT.SENSITIVE_RESULT_INTEG
- 686 • OT.SID

687 cannot be mapped because these are out of scope.

688 The objectives for the operational environment can be mapped as follows:

Objective from the Platform-ST	Classification of OE	Objective from this ST
OE.APPLET	CfPOE	Covered by ALC class
OE.APPS-PROVIDER	CfPOE	Covered by ALC class
OE.CODE-EVIDENCE	CfPOE	Covered by ALC class
OE.KEY-CHANGE	CfPOE	Covered by ALC class
OE.PROCESS_SEC_IC	CfPOE	Covered by the Platform's certification and ALC class
OE.SECURITY-DOMAINS	CfPOE	Covered by ALC class
OE.USE_DIAG	SgOE	Covered by OE.Terminal, OE.Exam_Travel_Document, OE.Prot_Logical_Travel_Document.
OE.USE_KEYS	SgOE	Covered by OE.Terminal, OE.Exam_Travel_Document, OE.Prot_Logical_Travel_Document, OE.Terminal_Authentication.
OE.VERIFICATION	CfPOE	Covered by ALC class
OE.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY	CfPOE	Covered by ALC class

689 There is no conflict between security objectives of this ST and the [24].

690 **2.5.4. SECURITY REQUIREMENTS**

691 The Security Requirements of the Platform ST can be mapped as follows:

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FAU_ARP.1	FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FAU_ARP.1 facilitate to protect the TOE as required by these SFRs.
FAU_SAS.1[SCP]	FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP FAU_SAS.1/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FAU_SAS.1[SCP] covers these SFRs.

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FCO_NRO.2[SC]	-	IP_SFR	-
FCS_CKM.1	-	IP_SFR	-
FCS_CKM.2	-	IP_SFR	-
FCS_CKM.3	-	IP_SFR	-
FCS_CKM.4	FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_CKM.4 of the Platform matches this SFR.
FCS_COP.1	FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[ECDHPACEKeyAgreement] is applied for key agreement during the PACE and CA2 protocols. FCS_COP1.1[SHA] is applied for session key derivation during PACE, protocols.
	FCS_CKM.1/CAM	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[ECDHPACEKeyAgreement] is applied for key agreement during the PACE-CAM.
	FCS_CKM.1/CA2	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_CKM.1.1 is applied for generation chip authentication key(s) pair on the TOE:
	FCS_CKM.1/RI	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_CKM.1.1 is applied for generation chip restricted identification key pair(s) on the TOE:
	FCS_CKM.1/AA	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_CKM.1.1 is applied for generation chip active authentication key pair on the TOE:
	FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP1.1[AES] is applied for nonce encryption during the PACE protocol. FCS_COP1.1[AES] is applied for encryption and decryption during secure messaging (PACE)
	FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP1.1[AES] or FCS_COP.1[TripleDES] is applied for nonce encryption during the PACE-CAM protocol. FCS_COP1.1[AES] or FCS_COP.1[TripleDES] is applied for encryption and decryption during secure messaging (PACE).
	FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP1.1[SHA] is applied for session key derivation during CA2 and ephemeral key compression (CA2 and TA2).

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
	FCS_COP.1/CAM	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[AES] is applied for message encryption of Chip Authentication Data.
	FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[ECDHPACEKeyA agreement] is applied for key agreement related to CA1 FCS_COP1.1[SHA] is applied for session key derivation during CA1.
	FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EA C2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[RSASignaturePK CS1] orFCS_COP.1.1[ECSignature] for digital signature verification related to TA2.
	FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_ EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[AESMAC] is applied to generate and verify the message authentication codes.
	FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_ EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP.1.1[AESMAC] is applied to generate and verify the message authentication codes.
	FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EA C1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1[TripleDES] or FCS_COP1.1[AES] is applied for encryption and decryption during secure messaging (CA1)
	FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_E AC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP.1.1[AESMAC] is applied to generate and verify the message authentication codes (CA1)
	FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EA C1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[RSASignaturePK CS1] orFCS_COP.1.1[ECSignature] for digital signature verification related to TA1.
	FCS_COP.1/AA	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[RSASignaturePK CS1] orFCS_COP.1.1[ECSignature] for digital signature generation related to Active Authentication.
	FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1 [AESMAC] is applied for generating the authentication token.
	FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[ECDHPACEKeyA agreement] is applied for key agreement related to RI FCS_COP1.1[SHA] is applied for restricted identification.

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
	FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2 PP	RP_SFR-SERV	<p>FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during PACE secure messaging the verify the message authentication codes.</p> <p>FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during CA secure messaging to verify the message authentication codes.</p> <p>FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during secure messaging to verify the message authentication codes.</p> <p>FCS_COP1.1[SHA] is applied for public key compression (in case DH).</p>
	FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1 PP	RP_SFR-SERV	<p>FCS_COP1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during PACE secure messaging the verify the message authentication codes.</p> <p>FCS_COP1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during CA secure messaging to verify the message authentication codes.</p> <p>FCS_COP1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during secure messaging (based on Personalisation Agent Key) to verify the message authentication codes.</p> <p>FCS_COP1.1[SHA] is applied for public key compression (in case DH).</p>
	FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2 PP FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1 PP	RP_SFR-SERV	<p>FCS_COP1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during PACE secure messaging the verify the message authentication codes</p>
	FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1P P	RP_SFR-SERV	<p>FCS_COP.1.1[AESMAC] or FCS_COP.1[DESMAC] is applied for message authentication code generation and verification related to PACE.</p>

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
	FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[AESMAC] is applied for message authentication code generation and verification related to CA2.
	FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1P P	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[AESMAC] or FCS_COP.1[DESMAC] is applied for message authentication code generation and verification related to CA1.
	FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied for message authentication code verification related to CA1.
	FIA_API.1/AA	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[RSASignaturePK CS1] or FCS_COP.1.1[ECSignature] is applied for digital signature verification for Active Authentication protocol..
	FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[AESMAC] is applied for chip authentication data generation related to PACE-CAM.
	FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1P P	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[RSASignaturePK CS1] or FCS_COP.1.1[ECSignature] is applied for digital signature verification for TA.
	FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1P P	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during PACE secure messaging the verify the message authentication codes. FCS_COP1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during CA secure messaging to verify the message authentication codes. FCS_COP1.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP1.1[AESMAC] is applied during secure messaging (based on Personalisation Agent Key) to verify the message authentication codes. FCS_COP1.1[SHA] is applied for public key compression (in case DH).

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FCS_RNG.1	FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2P	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1[AES] and or FCS_COP.1[AESMAC] are applied during secure messaging to protect against disclosure and modification
	FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1[AES] and FCS_COP.1[AESMAC] are applied during secure messaging to protect against disclosure and modification
	FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1P	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1[TripleDES] or FCS_COP.1[AES] and FCS_COP.1[DESMAC] or FCS_COP.1[AESMAC] are applied during secure messaging to protect against disclosure and modification
	FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1.1[RSASignaturePKCS1] or FCS_COP.1.1[ECSSignature] is applied for digital signature verification for TA1 and TA2.
	FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_RNG.1 provides nonce and challenge generation for PACE and TA2.
	FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1[TripleDES] or FCS_COP.1[AES] is applied during secure messaging to protect the confidentiality of transmitted and received user data.
	FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_RNG.1 is applied to generate fresh nonce for PACE and TA2
	FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_RNG.1 is applied to generate fresh nonce for PACE, TA1 and Active Authentication.
	FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2P	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1[AESMAC] is applied during secure messaging to protect the integrity of transmitted and received user data.
	FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2P	RP_SFR-SERV	FCS_COP.1[AES] is applied during secure messaging to protect the confidentiality of transmitted and received user data.
FCS_RNG.1[HDT]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_ACF.1[SD]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_ACC.1[SD]	-	IP_SFR	-

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FDP_ACC.2[FIRE WALL]	-	IP_SFR	
FDP_ACF.1[FIRE WALL]	-	IP_SFR	
FDP_ACC.2[ADEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_ACF.1[ADEL]	-	IP_SFR	
FDP_ACC.2[SecureBox]	-	IP_SFR	
FDP_ACF.1[SecureBox]	-	IP_SFR	
FDP_IFC.1[JCVM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFC.2[SC]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFC.2[CFG]	FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FDP_IFC.2[CFG] applied to protect the TOE in operational phase.
FDP_IFC.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	
FDP_IFF.1[JCVM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFF.1[SC]	FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EA1PP FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FDP_IFF.1[SC] applied to control the writing of initialization and pre-personalization data as required by these SFRs.
FDP_IFF.1[CFG]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFF.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_ITC.2[CCM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[OBJECTS]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[ABORT]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[APDU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[bArray]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[GlobalArray_Refined]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[KEYS]	FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FDP_RIP.1[KEYS] is applied to destroy the secure message session keys, the PACE ephemeral private key.

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FDP_RIP.1[TRANSIENT]	FCS_CKM.1	RP_SFR-MECH	FDP_RIP.1[TRANSIENT] is responsible to destroy the session keys.
FDP_RIP.1[ADEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[ODEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_ROL.1[FIRE WALL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_ROL.1[CCM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_SDI.2[DATA]	FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FDP_SDI.2[DATA] checks the integrity of TSF data.
FDP_SDI.2[SENSITIVE_RESULT]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_UIT.1[CCM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_AFL.1[BIO]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_AFL.1[PIN]	FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2P P	IP_SFR	FIA_AFL.1[PIN] is applied for PIN management.
FIA_ATD.1[AID]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_ATD.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_UID.1[SC]	FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2P P FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1P P	RP_SFR-MECH	FIA_UID.1[SC] handled the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UID.1[CFG]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_UID.2[AID]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_UID.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_USB.1[AID]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_USB.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_UAU.1[SC]	FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FIA_UAU.1[SC] handled the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UAU.4[SC]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[JCRE]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[JCVM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[ADDEL]	-	IP_SFR	-

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FMT_MSA.1[SC]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[SecureBox]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[CFG]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[SD]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.2[FIREWALL-JCVM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[FIREWALL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[JCM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[ADEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[SecureBox]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[CFG]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[SD]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[SC]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MTD.1[JCE]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MTD.3[JCE]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[ADEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[SecureBox]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[CFG]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[SD]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[SC]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[INSTALLER]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[ADEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[CFG]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[SD]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPR_UNO.1	-	IP_SFR	-

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FPT_EMSEC.1	FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FPT_EMSEC.1 of the Platform matches these SFRs.
FPT_FLS.1	FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP FPT_FLS.1/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FPT_FLS.1 of the Platform ensures the secure state of the TOE as required by FPT_FLS.1
FPT_FLS.1[INSTALLER]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_FLS.1[ADEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_FLS.1[ODEL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_FLS.1[CCM]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_FLS.1[MODULAR-DESIGN]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_TDC.1	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_RCV.3[INSTALLER]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_PHP.3	FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP	RP_SFR-MECH	FPT_PHP.3 of the Platform matches these SFRs.
FTP_ITC.1[SC]	-	IP_SFR	-
ADV_SPM.1	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFC.2[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFC.2[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFC.2[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_IFF.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_UAU.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_UAU.4[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FIA_UID.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_FLS.1[OSU]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_ACC.2[MDEL]	-	IP_SFR	-

Platform SFR	Corresponding TOE SFR	Category of Platform's SFRs	Remarks
FDP_ACF.1[MDE L]	-	IP_SFR	-
FDP_RIP.1[MDE L]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.1[MD EL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_MSA.3[MD EL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMF.1[MD EL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FMT_SMR.1[MD EL]	-	IP_SFR	-
FPT_FLS.1[MDEL]	-	IP_SFR	-

Table 8 Mapping of Security requirements

692

693 The FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP, FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP, FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP and
 694 FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP are not covered directly by [24]. As described in [5] and [6] the purposes
 695 of these SFRs is to prevent misuse of test features of the TOE over the life cycle phases.

696 According to [24] the Platform consists of the Micro Controller, CryptoLibrary and Operation
 697 System, which are certified as well. By the Micro Controller the limited availability and capability
 698 of test features are ensured after Manufacturing phase of the TOE. FMT_LIM.1 and
 699 FMT_LIM.2 are covered by the following Security Functions of Micro Controller ST:
 700 TSF.Control. For details please check: [35]

701 To sum up the above-mentioned Security Functions of Micro Controller ensure that the test
 702 features of TOE cannot be misused.

703 The Personalization Agent (FMT_SMR.1) may use the GlobalPlatform function of the Platform.

704 The TOE initialization and pre-personalization (FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP and
 705 FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP) rely on the Platform functions.

706

707 **2.5.5. ASSURANCE REQUIREMENTS**

708 This ST requires EAL 5 according to Common Criteria V3.1 R5 augmented by ALC_DVS.2
 709 and AVA_VAN.5.

710 The [24] requires EAL 6 according to Common Criteria V3.1 R5 augmented by: ASE_TSS.2
 711 and ALC_FLR.1.

712 As EAL 6 covers all assurance requirements of EAL 5 augmented with AVA_VAN.5 and
713 ALC_DVS.2 of this ST will match to the [24] assurance requirements.

714 **2.6.Analysis**

715 Overall, there is no conflict between security requirements of this ST and [24].

716 3. SECURITY PROBLEM DEFINITION

717 3.1.Introduction

718 3.1.1. ASSETS

719 3.1.1.1.Primary Assets

720 As long as they are in the scope of the TOE, the primary assets to be protected by the TOE
721 are listed below. For a definition of terms used, but not defined here, see the Glossary.

722 **Authenticity of the Electronic Document's Chip**

723 The authenticity of the electronic document's chip personalized by the issuing state or
724 organization for the Electronic Document Holder, is used by the electronic document presenter
725 to prove his possession of a genuine electronic document.

726 *Generic Security Property: Authenticity*

727 This asset is equal to the one(s) of [5] and [6], which itself stem from [13].

728 **Electronic Document Tracing Data**

729 Technical information about the current and previous locations of the electronic document
730 gathered unnoticeable by the Electronic Document Holder recognizing the TOE not knowing
731 any PACE password. TOE tracing data can be provided / gathered.

732 *Generic Security Property: Unavailability*

733 This asset is equal to the one(s) of [5] and [6], which itself stem from [13]. Note that
734 unavailability here is required for anonymity of the Electronic Document Holder.

735 **Sensitive User Data**

736 User data, which have been classified as sensitive data by the electronic document issuer, e.
737 g. sensitive biometric data. Sensitive user data are a subset of all user data, and are protected
738 by EAC1, EAC2, or both.

739 *Generic Security Properties: Confidentiality, Integrity, Authenticity*

740 User Data stored on the TOE

741 All data, with the exception of authentication data, that are stored in the context of the
742 application(s) on the electronic document. These data are allowed to be read out, used or
743 modified either by a PACE terminal, or, in the case of sensitive data, by an EAC1 terminal or
744 an EAC2 terminal with appropriate authorization level.

745 *Generic Security Properties: Confidentiality, Integrity, Authenticity*

746 This asset is included from [5] and [6] respectively. In these protection profiles it is an extension
747 of the asset defined in [13].

748 User Data transferred between the TOE and the Terminal

749 All data, with the exception of authentication data, that are transferred (both directions) during
750 usage of the application(s) of the electronic document between the TOE and authenticated
751 terminals.

752 *Generic Security Properties: Confidentiality, Integrity, Authenticity*

753 This asset is included from [5] and [6] respectively. In these protection profiles it is an extension
754 of the asset defined in [13]. As for confidentiality, note that even though not each data element
755 being transferred represents a secret, [17], [18] resp. require confidentiality of all transferred
756 data by secure messaging in encrypt-then-authenticate mode.

757 *3.1.1.2.Secondary Assets*

758 In order to achieve a sufficient protection of the primary assets listed above, the following
759 secondary assets also have to be protected by the TOE.

760 Accessibility to the TOE Functions and Data only for Authorized Subjects

761 Property of the TOE to restrict access to TSF and TSF-Data stored in the TOE to authorized
762 subjects only.

763 *Generic Security Property: Availability*

764 Genuineness of the TOE

765 Property of the TOE to be authentic in order to provide claimed security functionality in a proper
766 way.

767 *Generic Security Property: Availability*

768 **Electronic Document Communication Establishment Authorization Data**

769 Restricted-revealable authorization information for a human user being used for verification of
770 the authorization attempts as an authorized user (PACE password). These data are stored in
771 the TOE and are not send to it.

772 Restricted-revealable here refers to the fact that if necessary, the Electronic Document Holder
773 may reveal her verification values of CAN and MRZ to an authorized person, or to a device
774 that acts according to respective regulations and is considered trustworthy.

775 *Generic Security Properties:* Confidentiality, Integrity

776 **Secret Electronic Document Holder Authentication Data**

777 Secret authentication information for the Electronic Document Holder being used for
778 verification of the authentication attempts as authorized Electronic Document Holder (PACE
779 passwords).

780 *Generic Security Properties:* Confidentiality, Integrity

781 **TOE internal Non-Secret Cryptographic Material**

782 Permanently or temporarily stored non-secret cryptographic (public) keys and other non-secret
783 material used by the TOE in order to enforce its security functionality.

784 *Generic Security Properties:* Integrity, Authenticity

785 **TOE internal Secret Cryptographic Keys**

786 Permanently or temporarily stored secret cryptographic material used by the TOE in order to
787 enforce its security functionality.

788 *Generic Security Properties:* Confidentiality, Integrity

789 **3. Application note (from ST author, application note 8)**

790 The above secondary assets represent TSF and TSF-Data in the sense of CC.

791 **3.1.2. SUBJECTS**

792 This ST considers the following external entities and subjects:

793 Attacker

794 A threat agent (a person or a process acting on his behalf) trying to undermine the security
795 policy defined by the current ST, especially to change properties of the assets that have to be
796 maintained. The attacker is assumed to possess at most high attack potential. Note that the
797 attacker might capture any subject role recognized by the TOE.

798 Country Signing Certification Authority (CSCA)

799 An organization enforcing the policy of the electronic document issuer, i.e. confirming
800 correctness of user and TSF data that are stored within the electronic document. The CSCA
801 represents the country specific root of the public key infrastructure (PKI) for the electronic
802 document and creates Document Signer Certificates within this PKI. The CSCA also issues a
803 self-signed CSCA certificate that has to be distributed to other countries by secure diplomatic
804 means, see [7].

805 Country Verifying Certification Authority (CVCA)

806 The Country Verifying Certification Authority (CVCA) enforces the privacy policy of the issuing
807 state or organization, i. e. enforcing protection of Sensitive User Data that are stored in the
808 electronic document. The CVCA represents the country specific root of the PKI of EAC1
809 terminals, EAC2 terminals respectively, and creates Document Verifier Certificates within this
810 PKI. Updates of the public key of the CVCA are distributed as CVCA Link-Certificates.

811 Document Signer (DS)

812 An organization enforcing the policy of the CSCA. A DS signs the Document Security Object
813 that is stored on the electronic document for Passive Authentication. A Document Signer is
814 authorized by the national CSCA that issues Document Signer Certificate, see [7]. Note that
815 this role is usually delegated to a Personalization Agent.

816 Document Verifier (DV)

817 An organization issuing terminal certificates as a Certificate Authority, authorized by the
818 corresponding CVCA to issue certificates for EAC1 terminals, EAC2 terminals respectively,
819 see [19].

820 Electronic Document Holder

821 A person the electronic document issuer has personalized the electronic document for.
822 Personalization here refers to associating a person uniquely with a specific electronic
823 document.

824 Electronic Document Presenter

825 A person presenting the electronic document to a terminal and claiming the identity of the
826 Electronic Document Holder. Note that an electronic document presenter can also be an
827 attacker.

828 Manufacturer

829 Generic term comprising both the IC manufacturer that produces the integrated circuit, and the
830 electronic document manufacturer that creates the electronic document and attaches the IC to
831 it. The manufacturer is the default user of the TOE during the manufacturing life cycle phase.
832 When referring to the role manufacturer, the TOE itself does not distinguish between the IC
833 manufacturer and the electronic document manufacturer.

834 PACE Terminal

835 A technical system verifying correspondence between the password stored in the electronic
836 document and the related value presented to the terminal by the electronic document
837 presenter. A PACE terminal implements the terminal part of the PACE protocol and
838 authenticates itself to the electronic document using a shared password (CAN, eID-PIN, eID-
839 PUK or MRZ). A PACE terminal is not allowed reading Sensitive User Data.

840 Personalization Agent

841 An organization acting on behalf of the electronic document issuer that personalizes the
842 electronic document for the Electronic Document Holder. Personalization includes some or all
843 of the following activities:

- 844 (i) establishing the identity of the Electronic Document Holder for the biographic data
845 in the electronic document,
- 846 (ii) enrolling the biometric reference data of the Electronic Document Holder,
- 847 (iii) writing a subset of these data on the physical electronic document (optical
848 personalization) and storing them within the electronic document's chip (electronic
849 personalization),
- 850 (iv) writing document meta data (i. e. document type, issuing country, expiry date, etc.)
- 851 (v) writing the initial TSF data, and
- 852 (vi) signing the Document Security Object, and the elementary files EF.CardSecurity
853 and the EF.ChipSecurity (if applicable [7], [19]) in the role DS. Note that the role
854 Personalization Agent may be distributed among several institutions according to
855 the operational policy of the electronic document issuer.

856 EAC1 Terminal / EAC2 Terminal

857 A terminal that has successfully passed the Terminal Authentication protocol (TA) version 1 is
858 an EAC1 terminal, while an EAC2 terminal needs to have successfully passed TA version 2.
859 Both are authorized by the electronic document issuer through the Document Verifier of the
860 receiving branch (by issuing terminal certificates) to access a subset or all of the data stored
861 on the electronic document.

862 Terminal

863 A terminal is any technical system communicating with the TOE through the contactless or
864 contact-based interface. The role terminal is the default role for any terminal being recognized
865 by the TOE as neither being authenticated as a PACE terminal nor an EAC1 terminal nor an
866 EAC2 terminal.

867 3.2.Threats

868 This section describes the threats to be averted by the TOE independently or in collaboration
869 with its IT environment. These threats result from the assets protected by the TOE and the
870 method of the TOE's use in the operational environment.

871 3.2.1. THREATS FROM EAC1PP

872 This ST includes the following threats from [5]. They concern EAC1-protected data.

- 873 • T.Counterfeit
- 874 • T.Read_Sensitive_Data

875 Due to identical definitions and names, they are not repeated here. For the remaining threats
876 from [5], cf. Chapter 3.2.3.

877 3.2.2. THREATS FROM EAC2PP

878 This ST includes the following threats from the [6]. They concern EAC2-protected data.

- 879 • T.Counterfeit/EAC2
- 880 • T.Sensitive_Data

881 Due to identical definitions and names, they are not repeated here.

882 **3.2.3. THREATS FROM PACEPP**

883 Both [5] and [6] claim [13], and thus include the threats formulated in [13]. We list each threat
884 only once here. Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here.

- 885 • **T.Abuse-Func**
- 886 • **T.Eavesdropping**
- 887 • **T.Forgery**
- 888 • **T.Information_Leakage**
- 889 • **T.Malfunction**
- 890 • **T.Phys-Tamper**
- 891 • **T.Skimming**
- 892 • **T.Tracing**

893 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here.

894 **3.3.Organizational Security Policies**

895 The TOE shall comply with the following Organizational Security Policies (OSP) as security
896 rules, procedures, practices, or guidelines imposed by an organization upon its operations (see
897 [1], sec. 3.2). This ST includes the OSPs from the claimed protection profiles as listed below
898 and provides no further OSPs.

899 **3.3.1. OSPs FROM EAC1PP**

900 This ST includes the following OSPs from [5], if the TOE contains EAC1-protected data.

- 901 • **P.Personalisation**
- 902 • **P.Sensitive_Data**

903 Due to identical definitions and names, they are not repeated here. For the remaining OSPs
904 from [5], see the next sections.

905 **3.3.2. OSPs FROM EAC2PP**

906 This ST includes the following OSPs from [6]. They mainly concern EAC2-protected data.

907 • **P.EAC2_Terminal**

908 • **P.RestrictedIdentity**

909 • **P.Terminal_PKI**

910 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here. For the
911 remaining OSPs from [6], cf. the next section.

912 **3.3.3. OSPs FROM PACEPP**

913 This ST includes the following OSPs from [13], since both [5] and [6] claim [13]. We list each
914 OSP only once here. Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated
915 here as well.

916 • **P.Card_PKI**

917 • **P.Manufact**

918 • **P.Pre-Operational**

919 • **P.Trustworthy_PKI**

920 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here.

921 **3.3.4. ADDITIONAL OSP**

922 The ST includes the following OSP from [13], since both [5] and [6] claim [13], but the
923 **P.Terminal** was extended because the Active Authentication protocol. The extension is
924 marked with **bold** and the other part of the OSP remained unchanged.

925 **P.Terminal**

926 The PACE terminal shall operate their terminals as follows:

- 927 1. The related terminals (PACE terminal) shall be used by terminal operators and by travel
928 document holders as defined in [9].
- 929 2. They shall implement the terminal parts of the PACE protocol [9], of the Passive
930 Authentication [9] and use them in this order³. The PACE terminal shall use randomly and
931 (almost) uniformly selected nonce, if required by the protocols (for generating ephemeral
932 keys for Diffie-Hellmann).
933 **Furthermore the PACE terminal and EAC1 terminal shall implement the terminal parts**
934 **of the Active Authentication protocol as described in [9].**

³ This order is commensurate with [9].

- 935 3. The related terminals need not to use any own credentials.
- 936 4. They shall also store the Country Signing Public Key and the Document Signer Public Key
937 (in form of C_{CSCA} and C_{DS}) in order to enable and to perform Passive
938 Authentication(determination of the authenticity of data groups stored in the travel
939 document, [9]).
- 940 5. The related terminals and their environment shall ensure confidentiality and integrity of
941 respective data handled by them (e.g. confidentiality of PACE passwords, integrity of PKI
942 certificates, etc.), where it is necessary for a secure operation of the TOE according to the
943 [13].

944 **Justification:** The modification of **P.Terminal** is extended the original OSP in order to support
945 the Active Authentication protocol. Taking into consideration the extension is not modify the
946 original OSP, but added further requirements, this extension is not hurt the strict conformance
947 as determined in PP Claim.

948 3.4.Assumptions

949 The assumptions describe the security aspects of the environment in which the TOE will be
950 used or is intended to be used. This ST includes the assumptions from the claimed protection
951 profiles as listed below and defines no further assumptions.

952 3.4.1. ASSUMPTIONS FROM EAC1PP

953 This ST includes the following assumptions from the [5]. They concern EAC1-protected data.

- 954 • **A.Auth_PKI**
- 955 • **A.Insp_Sys**

956 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here. For the
957 remaining assumptions from [5], see the next sections.

958 3.4.2. ASSUMPTIONS FROM EAC2PP

959 [6] only includes the assumption from [13] (see below) and defines no other assumption.

960 3.4.3. ASSUMPTIONS FROM PACEPP

961 This ST includes the following assumptions from [13], since both [5] and [6] claim [13].

962 • **A.Passive_Auth**

963 Due to an identical definition and name, its definition is not repeated here as well.

964 4. SECURITY OBJECTIVES

965 This chapter describes the security objectives for the TOE and for the TOE environment. The
966 security objectives for the TOE environment are separated into security objectives for the
967 development, and production environment and security objectives for the operational
968 environment.

969 4.1. Security Objectives for the TOE

970 This section describes the security objectives for the TOE, addressing the aspects of identified
971 threats to be countered by the TOE, and organizational security policies to be met by the TOE.

972 OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA

973 Proof of the electronic documents authenticity with Active Authentication

974 The TOE must support the Terminal to verify the identity and authenticity of the electronic
975 document as issued by the identified issuing State or Organisation by means of the Active
976 Authentication protocol as defined in [7], [9]. The authenticity proof provided by electronic
977 document shall be protected against attacks with high attack potential.

978 4.1.1. SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE TOE FROM EAC1PP

979 This ST includes the following additional security objectives for the TOE from [5] that are not
980 included in [13]. They concern EAC1-protected data.

- 981 • OT.Chip_Auth_Proof
- 982 • OT.Sens_Data_Conf

983 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here. For the
984 remaining security objectives from [5], see the next sections.

985 In addition, the following security objective is defined here:

986 OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM

987 Proof of the electronic document's chip authenticity

988 The TOE must support the terminals to verify the identity and authenticity of the Electronic
989 document's chip as issued by the identified issuing State or Organization by means of the
990 PACE-Chip Authentication Mapping (PACE-CAM) as defined in [9]. The authenticity proof

991 provided by electronic document's chip shall be protected against attacks with high attack
992 potential.

993 **Application note 4 (from ST author)**

994 PACE-CAM enables much faster authentication of the of the chip than running PACE with
995 General Mapping (according to [17]) followed by CA1. OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM is
996 intended to require the Chip to merely provide an additional means – with the same level of
997 security – of authentication.

998 **4.1.2. SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE TOE EAC2PP**

999 This ST includes the following additional security objectives for the TOE from [6] that are not
1000 included in [13]. They concern EAC2-protected data.

1001 • **OT.AC_Pers_EAC2**

1002 • **OT.CA2**

1003 • **OT.RI_EAC2**

1004 • **OT.Sens_Data_EAC2**

1005 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here. For the
1006 remaining security objectives from [6], see the next sections.

1007 **4.1.3. SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE TOE PACEPP**

1008 Both [5] and [6] claim [13]. Therefore, the following security objectives are included as well.

1009 We list them only once here.

- 1010 • **OT.AC_Pers**
- 1011 • **OT.Data_Authenticity**
- 1012 • **OT.Data_Confidentiality**
- 1013 • **OT.Data_Integrity**
- 1014 • **OT.Identification**
- 1015 • **OT.Prot_Abuse-Func**
- 1016 • **OT.Prot_Inf_Leak**
- 1017 • **OT.Prot_Malfunction**
- 1018 • **OT.Prot_Phys-Tamper**
- 1019 • **OT.Tracing**

1020 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here.

1021 **4.2.Security Objectives for the Operational Environment**

1022 **4.2.1. SECURITY OBJECTIVES FROM EAC1PP**

1023 This ST includes the following security objectives for the TOE from the [5]. They mainly concern
1024 EAC1-protected data.

- 1025 • **OE.Auth_Key_Travel_Document**
- 1026 • **OE.Authoriz_Sens_Data**
- 1027 • **OE.Exam_Travel_Document**
- 1028 • **OE.Ext_Insp_Systems**
- 1029 • **OE.Prot_Logical_Travel_Document**

1030 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here. For the
1031 remaining ones, see the next sections

1032 **4.2.2. SECURITY OBJECTIVES FROM EAC2PP**

1033 This ST includes the following security objectives for the TOE from the [6]. They mainly concern
1034 EAC2-protected data.

1035 • **OE.Chip_Auth_Key**

1036 • **OE.RestrictedIdentity**

1037 • **OE.Terminal_Authentication**

1038 Due to identical definitions and names, their definitions are not repeated here. For the
1039 remaining ones, see the next section.

1040 **4.2.3. SECURITY OBJECTIVES FROM PACEPP**

1041 Both [5] and [6] claim [13]. Therefore, the following security objectives on the operational
1042 environment are included as well. We repeat them only once here.

1043 • **OE.Legislative_Compliance**

1044 • **OE.Passive_Auth_Sign**

1045 • **OE.Personalisation**

1046 • **OE.Terminal**

1047 • **OE.Travel_Document_Holder**

1048 Due to identical definitions and names, they are not repeated here as well.

1049 **4.2.4. ADDITIONAL SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE ENVIRONMENT**

1050 The following objectives on the environment are introduced because of the Active
1051 Authentication

1052 • **OE.Auth_Key_AA**

1053 **Electronic document Active Authentication key pair**

1054 The issuing State or Organisation has to establish the necessary infrastructure in order to (i)
1055 generate the electronic document's Active Authentication Key Pair, (ii) sign (Passive
1056 Authentication) and store the Active Authentication Public Key in the Active Authentication
1057 Public Key data in EF.DG15 and (iii) support Terminals of receiving States or Organisations to
1058 verify the authenticity of the electronic document used for genuine electronic document.

1059 • **OE.Exam_Electronic_Document_AA**

1060 **Examination of the genuineness of the electronic document with Active Authentication**

1061 The Terminal of the receiving State or Organisation perform the Active Authentication protocol
1062 according to [7] and [9] in order to verify the genuineness of the presented electronic document.

1063 **4.3.Security Objective Rationale**

1064 Table 9 provides an overview of the security objectives' coverage. According to [1], the tracing
 1065 between security objectives and the security problem definition must ensure that 1) *each*
 1066 *security objective traces to at least one threat, OSP and assumption, 2) each threat, OSP and*
 1067 *assumption has at least one security objective tracing to it, and 3) the tracing is correct* (i.e.
 1068 the main point being that security objectives for the TOE do not trace back to assumptions).

1069 This is illustrated in the following way:

- 1070 1. can be inferred for security objectives from claimed PPs by looking up the security
 1071 objective rationale of the claimed PPs and the newly introduced functions (i.e.
 1072 **OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA,** **OE.Auth_Key_AA,**
 1073 **OE.Exam_Electronic_Document_AA** and **OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM**) by
 1074 checking the columns of Table 9 ,
- 1075 2. can be inferred for threats, OSPs and assumptions from the claimed PPs by looking up
 1076 the security objective rationale of the claimed PPs and for newly introduced or
 1077 extended⁴ threats, OSPs and assumptions by checking the rows of Table 9 , and
- 1078 3. simply by checking the columns of Table 9 and the security objective rationales from
 1079 the claimed PPs.

	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM	OE.Auth_Key_AA	OE.Exam_Electronic_Document_AA
T.Counterfeit	X	X	X	X
P.Terminal	-	-	-	X

1080 **Table 9 Security Objective Rationale**

1081 The threat **T.Counterfeit** (from [5]) is countered in [5] by OT.Chip_Auth_Proof. That security
 1082 objectives addresses the implementation of the Chip Authentication Protocol Version 1 (CA1)
 1083 and thus counters the thread of counterfeiting an electronic document containing an ePassport
 1084 application. Here, the additional security objective for the TOE
 1085 OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM is introduced. It ensures that the chip in addition to CA1
 1086 also supports the PACE-Chip Authentication Mapping (PACE-CAM) protocol, which supports
 1087 the same security functionality as CA1 does. PACE-CAM enables much faster authentication
 1088 of the of the chip than running PACE with general mapping followed by CA1.

1089 Furthermore **T.Counterfeit** is countered by OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA, OE.Auth_Key_AA and
 1090 OE.Exam_Electronic_Document_AA. These security objectives addresses the implementation
 1091 of the Active Authentication and thus counters the thread of counterfeiting an electronic

⁴ Only the impact of the modification is marked in the table.

1092 document containing an ePassport application. It ensures that the chip supports the Active
1093 Authentication protocol, which supports to verify that the electronic document is genuine
1094 (similar as Chip Authentication without secure messaging).

1095 The OSP **P.Terminal** is extended to support the Active Authentication protocol. With this
1096 extension the **P.Terminal** countered by the security objective
1097 **OE.Exam_Electronic_Document_AA**. The **OE.Exam_Electronic_Document_AA** enforces
1098 the terminal parts of the Active Authentication.

1099 **5. EXTENDED COMPONENTS DEFINITION**

1100 This ST includes all extended components from the claimed PPs. This includes

- 1101 • FAU_SAS.1 from the family FAU_SAS from [13]
- 1102 • FCS_RND.1 from the family FCS_RND from [13]
- 1103 • FMT_LIM.1 and FMT_LIM.2 from the family FMT_LIM [13]
- 1104 • FPT_EMS.1 from the family FPT_EMS from [13]
- 1105 • FIA_API.1 from the family FIA_API from [6]

1106 For precise definitions we refer to [13] and [6].

1107 **6. SECURITY REQUIREMENTS**

1108 This part defines detailed security requirements that shall be satisfied by the TOE. The
1109 statement of TOE security requirements shall define the *functional* and *assurance* security
1110 requirements that the TOE must satisfy in order to meet the security objectives for the TOE.

1111 Common Criteria allows several operations to be performed on security requirements on the
1112 component level: *refinement*, *selection*, *assignment* and *iteration*, cf. sec. 8.1 of [1]. Each of
1113 these operations is used in this ST.

1114 The **refinement** operation is used to add detail to a requirement, and thus further restricts a
1115 requirement. Refinements of security requirements are denoted in such a way that added
1116 words are in **bold text** and removed words are ~~crossed-out~~.

1117 The **selection** operation is used to select one or more options provided by CC in stating a
1118 requirement. Selections that have been made by the PP author are denoted as underlined text.
1119 Selections to be filled in by the ST author appear in square brackets with an indication that a
1120 selection has to be made, [selection:], and are *italicized*. Selections filled in by the ST author
1121 are denoted as double underlined text and a foot note where the selection choices from the
1122 PP are listed.

1123 The **assignment** operation is used to assign a specific value to an unspecified parameter,
1124 such as the length of a password. Assignments that have been made by the PP author are
1125 denoted as underlined text. Assignments to be filled in by the ST author appear in square
1126 brackets with an indication that an assignment has to be made [assignment:], and are *italicized*.
1127 In some cases the assignment made by the PP authors defines a selection to be performed
1128 by the ST author. Thus this text is underlined and italicized *like this*. Assignments filled in by
1129 the ST author are denoted as double underlined text.

1130 The **iteration** operation is used when a component is repeated with varying operations.
1131 Iteration is denoted by showing a slash “/”, and the iteration indicator after the component
1132 identifier. For the sake of better readability, the iteration operation may also be applied to a
1133 non-repeated single component in order to indicate that such component belongs to a certain
1134 functional cluster. In such a case, the iteration operation is applied to only one single
1135 component.

1136 In order to distinguish between SFRs defined here and SFRs that are taken over from PPs to
1137 which this ST claims strict conformance, the latter are iterated resp. renamed in the following
1138 way:

1139 /EAC1PP or /XXX_EAC1PP [5],

1140 /EAC2PP or /XXX_EAC2PP for [6].

1141 **6.1.Security Functional Requirements**

1142 The statements of security requirements must be internally consistent. As several different PPs
1143 with similar SFRs are claimed, great care must be taken to ensure that these several iterated
1144 SFRs do not lead to inconsistency.

1145 Despite this ST claims strict conformance to [13], SFRs can be safely ignored in this ST as
1146 long as [5] and [6] are taken into account.

1147 One must remember that each of these iterated SFRs mostly concerns different (groups of)
1148 user and TSF data for each protocol (i.e. PACE, EAC1 and EAC2). Three cases are
1149 distinguished:

- 1150 1. The SFRs apply to different data that are accessible by executing different protocols.
1151 Hence, they are completely separate. An example is FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE from [5]
1152 and [6]. No remark is added in such case in the text below.
- 1153 2. The SFRs are equivalent. Then we list them all for the sake of completeness. Hence,
1154 it suffices to consider only one iteration. For such SFRs, we explicitly give a remark. An
1155 example is FIA_AFL.1/PACE from [5] and [6].
- 1156 3. The SFRs do not apply to different data or protocols, but are also not completely
1157 equivalent. Then these multiple SFRs are refined in such a way, that one common
1158 component is reached that subsumes all iterations that stem from the inclusions of the
1159 claimed PPs. An example is FDP_ACF.1, which is combined here from [5] and [6].
1160 Such a case is also explicitly mentioned in the text.

1161 Thus internal consistency is not violated.

1162 **6.1.1. Class FCS**

1163 The following SFRs are imported due to claiming [6]. They concern cryptographic support for
1164 applications that contain EAC2-protected data groups.

- 1165 • FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP
- 1166 • FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP
- 1167 • FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP
- 1168 • FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP
- 1169 • FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP
- 1170 • FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP
- 1171 • FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP

1172 FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP

1173 Cryptographic Key Generation – Diffie-Hellman for PACE and CA2 Session Keys

1174 Hierarchical to: No other components

1175 Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution or
1176 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] not fulfilled, but
1177 **justified:**
1178 A Diffie-Hellman key agreement is used in order to
1179 have no key distribution, therefore FCS_CKM.2 makes
1180 no sense in this case.

1181 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1182 FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP

1183 FCS_CKM.1.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP

1184 The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic
1185 key generation algorithm Diffie-Hellman-Protocol compliant to [28] and ECDH compliant
1186 to [27]]⁵⁶ and specified cryptographic key sizes AES 128, 192, 256⁷ that meet the following:
1187 **[18]**⁸

1188 **5. Application note (taken from [6], application note 10)**

1189 In the above and all subsequent related SFRs, the reference w.r.t. the PACE protocol is
1190 changed to [18], whereas [13] references [7]. The difference between the two definitions is that
1191 [18] defines additional optional parameters for the command MSE:Set AT. This optional
1192 parameters (e.g. the CHAT) are technically required, since here Terminal Authentication 2
1193 (TA2) can be executed right after PACE (see FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP). As [7]
1194 does not consider TA2, no such definition is given there. These additional parameters are
1195 optional and not used during PACE itself (only afterwards). If PACE is run without TA2

⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

⁶ [selection: *Diffie-Hellman-Protocol compliant to [28] , ECDH compliant to [27]*]

⁷ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁸ [assignment: *list of standards*]

1196 afterwards, access to data on the chip is given as specified by [13]. If TA2 is run afterwards,
1197 access to data on the chip can be further restricted w.r.t. to the authorization level of the
1198 terminal. Therefore, this change of references does not violate strict conformance to [13]. We
1199 treat this change of references as a refinement operation, and thus mark the changed
1200 reference using **bold** text.

1201 **6. Application note (redefined by ST author, taken from [6], application note 11)**

1202 Applied.

1203 **7. Application note (taken from [6], application note 12)**

1204 [13] considers Diffie-Hellman key generation only for PACE. Since the TOE is required to
1205 implement Chip Authentication 2 (cf. FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP), here
1206 FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP applies for CA2 as well.

1207 FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP
1208 Cryptographic operation – Hash for key derivation

1209 Hierarchical to: No other components

1210 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1211 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
1212 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
1213 generation] not fulfilled, but **justified**:
1214 A hash function does not use any cryptographic key;
1215 hence, neither a respective key import nor key
1216 generation can be expected here.

1217 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction not fulfilled,
1218 but **justified**:
1219 A hash function does not use any cryptographic key;
1220 hence, a respective key destruction cannot be
1221 expected here.

1222 FCS_COP.1.1/SHA_EAC2PP

1223 The TSF shall perform hashing⁹ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm
1224 SHA-1, SHA-224, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512¹⁰ and cryptographic key sizes none¹¹ that
1225 meet the following: [29]¹².

⁹ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

¹⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

¹¹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

¹² [assignment: *list of standards*]

1226 8. Application note (taken from [6], application note 13)

1227 For compressing (hashing) an ephemeral public key for DH (TA2 and CA2), the hash function
1228 SHA-1 shall be used ([19]). The TOE shall implement as hash functions either SHA-1 or SHA-
1229 224 or SHA-256 for Terminal Authentication 2, cf. [19]. Within the normative Appendix of [19]
1230 'Key Derivation Function', it is stated that the hash function SHA-1 shall be used for deriving
1231 128-bit AES keys, whereas SHA-256 shall be used for deriving 192-bit and 256-bit AES keys.

1232 FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP

1233 Cryptographic operation – Signature verification

1234 Hierarchical to: No other components

1235 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1236 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
1237 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
1238 generation] not fulfilled, but **justified**:
1239 The root key PK_{CVCA} (initialization data) used for
1240 verifying the DV Certificate is stored in the TOE during
1241 its personalization in the card issuing life cycle phase¹³.
1242 Since importing the respective certificates (Terminal
1243 Certificate, DV Certificate) does not require any special
1244 security measures except those required by the current
1245 SFR (cf. FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP below), the current ST
1246 does not contain any dedicated requirement like
1247 FDP_ITC.2 for the import function.

1248 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction not fulfilled,
1249 but **justified**:
1250 Cryptographic keys used for the purpose of the current
1251 SFR (PK_{PCD}, PK_{DV}, PK_{CVCA}) are public keys; they do
1252 not represent any secret, and hence need not to be
1253 destroyed.

1254 FCS_COP.1.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP

1255 The TSF shall perform digital signature verification¹⁴ in accordance with a specified
1256 cryptographic algorithm RSA, RSA CRT and ECDSA¹⁵ and cryptographic key sizes RSA:

¹³ as already mentioned, operational use of the TOE is explicitly in focus of the ST and in the [6]

¹⁴ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

¹⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

1257 RSA, RSA CRT: 1024, 1280, 1536, 1984, 2048, 3072, 4096 and from 2000 bit to 4096 bit
 1258 in one bit steps; ECDSA: 160, 192, 224, 256, 320, 384, 521 bit¹⁶ that meet the following:
 1259 [25], [30]¹⁷.

1260 **9. Application note (taken from [6], application note 14)**

1261 This SFR is concerned with Terminal Authentication 2, cf. [18].

1262 **10. Application note (from ST author)**

1263 The TOE based on the Platform functionalities supports RSA and RSA-CRT and ECDSA digital
 1264 signature algorithms and cryptographic key sizes 1024 bits up to 4096 bits and 160 bits to 521
 1265 bits (ECDSA). These key lengths are supported with equivalent implementation- security
 1266 measures. However, to defend against attackers with high attack potential, the actual key
 1267 length the actual key length chosen for use during the operational phase must be appropriate
 1268 and in line with current cryptographic recommendations. When selecting the key length,
 1269 consideration must be given to the expected lifetime of the TOE to ensure that the chosen
 1270 cryptographic strength remains sufficient throughout the entire operational lifespan..

1271 FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP
 1272 Cryptographic operation – Encryption/Decryption AES

1273 Hierarchical to: No other components

1274 Dependencies: FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
 1275 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
 1276 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
 1277 generation] fulfilled by
 1278 FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP

1279 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
 1280 FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP

1281 FCS_COP.1.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP

1282 The TSF shall perform secure messaging – encryption and decryption¹⁸ in accordance
 1283 with a specified cryptographic algorithm AES in CBC mode¹⁹ and cryptographic key sizes
 1284 128, 192, 256 bit²⁰ that meet the following: **[19]**²¹

1285 **11. Application note (taken from [6], application note 15)**

¹⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]
¹⁷ [assignment: *list of standards*]
¹⁸ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]
¹⁹ [selection: *cryptographic algorithm*]
²⁰ [selection: *128, 192, 256 bit*]
²¹ [assignment: *list of standards*]

1286 This SFR requires the TOE to implement the cryptographic primitive AES for secure messaging
 1287 with encryption of transmitted data. The related session keys are agreed between the TOE
 1288 and the terminal as part of either the PACE protocol (PACE- K_{Enc}) or Chip Authentication 2 (CA-
 1289 K_{Enc}) according to FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP. Note that in accordance with [19], 3DES
 1290 could be used in CBC mode for secure messaging. Due to the fact that 3DES is not
 1291 recommended any more (cf. [18]), 3DES in any mode is no longer applicable here.

1292 **12. Application note (taken from [6], application note 16)**

1293 Refinement of FCS_COP.1.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP, since here PACE must adhere to [19].
 1294 All references (both the one in [13] and [19]) itself reference [12] for secure messaging. [19]
 1295 however further restricts the available choice of key-sizes and algorithms. Hence, [19] is fully
 1296 (backward) compatible to the reference given in [13].

1297 FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP
 1298 Cryptographic operation – MAC

1299 Hierarchical to: No other components

1300 Dependencies: FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
 1301 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
 1302 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
 1303 generation] fulfilled by
 1304 FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP
 1305 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
 1306 FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP

1307 FCS_COP.1.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP

1308 The TSF shall perform secure messaging – message authentication code²² in accordance
 1309 with a specified cryptographic algorithm CMAC²³ and cryptographic key sizes 128, 192,
 1310 256 bit²⁴ that meet the following: **[19]**²⁵

1311 **13. Application note (redefined by ST author, taken from [6], application note 17)**

1312 See 12. Application note (taken from [6], application note 16).

1313 **14. Application note (taken from [6], application note 18)**

1314 This SFR removes 3DES and restricts to CMAC compared to the SFR of [13] by selection.
 1315 Hence, a minimum key-size of 128 bit is required.

²² [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²³ [selection: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁴ [selection: *112 128, 192, 256 bit*]

²⁵ [assignment: *list of standards*]

- 1316 FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP
- 1317 Cryptographic key destruction – Session keys
- 1318 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 1319 Dependencies: FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
- 1320 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
- 1321 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
- 1322 generation] fulfilled by
- 1323 FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP and
- 1324 FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP

1325 FCS_CKM.4.1/EAC2PP

1326 The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic
 1327 key destruction method deallocation of the resource²⁶ that meets the following: none²⁷.

1328 **15. Application note**

1329 In [13] concerning this component requires the destruction of PACE session keys after
 1330 detection of an error in a received command by verification of the MAC. While the definition of
 1331 FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP remains unaltered, here this component also requires the destruction
 1332 of sessions keys after a successful run of Chip Authentication 2. The TOE shall destroy the
 1333 CA2 session keys after detection of an error in a received command by verification of the MAC.
 1334 The TOE shall clear the memory area of any session keys before starting the communication
 1335 with the terminal in a new after-reset-session as required by FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP.

1336 FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP

1337 Quality metric for random numbers

1338 Hierarchical to: No other components

1339 Dependencies: No dependencies.

1340 FCS_RND.1.1/EAC2PP

1341 The TSF shall provide a mechanism to generate random numbers that meet DRG.3 (high)
 1342 according to AIS20 [36]²⁸.

1343 **16. Application note**

1344 In [13] concerning this component requires the TOE to generate random numbers (random
 1345 nonce) for PACE. While the definition of FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP remains unaltered, here this

²⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key destruction method*]

²⁷ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁸ [assignment: *a defined quality metric*]

1346 component requires the TOE to generate random numbers (random nonce) for all
1347 authentication protocols (i.e. PACE, CA2), as required by FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP.

1348 The following SFRs are imported due to claiming [5]. They concern cryptographic support for
1349 applications that contain EAC1-protected data groups.

1350 • **FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP**

1351 • **FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP**

1352 (equivalent to **FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

1353 • **FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP**

1354 • **FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP**

1355 • **FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP**

1356 (equivalent to **FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

1357 • **FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP**

1358 • **FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP**

1359 • **FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP**

1360 • **FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP**

1361 **FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP**

1362 Cryptographic key generation – Diffie-Hellman for PACE session keys

1363 Hierarchical to: No other components

1364 Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution or
1365 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation].

1366 **Justification:** A Diffie-Hellman key agreement is used
1367 in order to have no key distribution, therefore
1368 FCS_CKM.2 makes no sense in this case.

1369 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction: fulfilled by
1370 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP

1371 **FCS_CKM.1.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP**

1372 The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic
1373 key generation algorithm Diffie-Hellman-Protocol compliant to [28], ECDH compliant to

1374 [27]²⁹³⁰ and specified cryptographic key sizes TDES 112, AES 128, 192 and 256 bits³¹ that
1375 meet the following:[7]³²

1376 FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP
1377 Encryption / Decryption AES / 3DES

1378 Hierarchical to: No other components

1379 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1380 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
1381 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
1382 generation]: fulfilled by
1383 FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP.

1384 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction: fulfilled by
1385 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP.

1386 FCS_COP.1.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP

1387 The TSF shall perform secure messaging – encryption and decryption³³ in accordance
1388 with a specified cryptographic algorithm AES, 3DES³⁴ in CBC mode³⁵ and cryptographic
1389 key sizes 3DES 112, AES 128, 192, 256 bit³⁶³⁷ that meet the following: compliant to [7]³⁸.

1390 FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP
1391 Cryptographic operation – MAC

1392 Hierarchical to: No other components

1393 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1394 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
1395 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
1396 generation]: fulfilled by
1397 FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP

²⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

³⁰ [selection: *Diffie-Hellman-Protocol compliant to [28], ECDH compliant to [27]*]

³¹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

³² [assignment: *list of standards*]

³³ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

³⁴ [selection: *AES, 3DES*]

³⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

³⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

³⁷ [selection: *112, 128, 192, 256*]

³⁸ [assignment: *list of standards*]

- 1398 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction: fulfilled by
1399 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP.
- 1400 FCS_COP.1.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP
- 1401 The TSF shall perform secure messaging – message authentication code³⁹ in accordance
1402 with a specified cryptographic algorithm CMAC, Retail-MAC^{40,41} and cryptographic key
1403 sizes 3DES 112, AES 128, 192, 256 bit^{42,43} that meet the following: compliant to [7]⁴⁴.
- 1404 FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP
1405 Cryptographic key generation – Diffie-Hellman for Chip Authentication session keys
- 1406 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 1407 Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution or
1408 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] fulfilled by
1409 FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP and
1410 FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP
- 1411 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1412 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP.
- 1413 FCS_CKM.1.1/CA_EAC1PP
- 1414 The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic
1415 key generation algorithm Diffie-Hellman protocol compliant to PKCS#3 and based on an
1416 ECDH protocol⁴⁵ and specified cryptographic key sizes TDES 112, AES 128, 192 and 256
1417 bits⁴⁶ that meet the following: based on the Diffie-Hellman key derivation protocol compliant
1418 to [28] and [17] , based on an ECDH protocol compliant to [27]^{47,48}
- 1419 **17. Application note (taken from [5], application note 12)**

³⁹ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

⁴⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

⁴¹ [selection: *CMAC, Retail-MAC*]

⁴² [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁴³ [selection: *112, 128, 192, 256*]

⁴⁴ [assignment: *list of standards*]

⁴⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

⁴⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁴⁷ [assignment: *list of standards*]

⁴⁸ [selection: *based on the Diffie-Hellman key derivation protocol compliant to [28] and [17] , based on an ECDH protocol compliant to [27]*]

1420 FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP implicitly contains the requirements for the hashing functions used
1421 for key derivation by demanding compliance to [17].

1422 **18. Application note (taken from [5], application note 13)**

1423 The TOE generates a shared secret value with the terminal during the Chip Authentication
1424 Protocol Version 1, see [17]. This protocol may be based on the Diffie-Hellman-Protocol
1425 compliant to PKCS#3 (i.e. modulo arithmetic based cryptographic algorithm, cf. [28]) or on the
1426 ECDH compliant to TR-03111 (i.e. an elliptic curve cryptography algorithm) (cf. [27], for
1427 details). The shared secret value is used to derive the Chip Authentication Session Keys used
1428 for encryption and MAC computation for secure messaging (defined in Key Derivation Function
1429 [17]).

1430 **19. Application note (taken from [5], application note 14)**

1431 The TOE shall implement the hash function SHA-1 for the cryptographic primitive to derive the
1432 keys for secure messaging from any shared secrets of the Authentication Mechanisms. The
1433 Chip Authentication Protocol v.1 may use SHA-1 (cf. [17]). The TOE may implement additional
1434 hash functions SHA-224 and SHA-256 for the Terminal Authentication Protocol v.1 (cf. [17] for
1435 details).

1436 **20. Application note (taken from [5], application note 15)**

1437 The TOE shall destroy any session keys in accordance with FCS_CKM.4 from [13] after (i)
1438 detection of an error in a received command by verification of the MAC and (ii) after successful
1439 run of the Chip Authentication Protocol v.1. (iii) The TOE shall destroy the PACE Session Keys
1440 after generation of a Chip Authentication Session Keys and changing the secure messaging
1441 to the Chip Authentication Session Keys. (iv) The TOE shall clear the memory area of any
1442 session keys before starting the communication with the terminal in a new after-reset-session
1443 as required by FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP. Concerning the Chip Authentication keys
1444 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP is also fulfilled by FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP.

1445 FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP
1446 Cryptographic operation – Symmetric Encryption / Decryption

1447 Hierarchical to: No other components

1448 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1449 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
1450 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
1451 generation] fulfilled by FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP

1452 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1453 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP

1454 FCS_COP.1.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP

1455 The TSF shall perform secure messaging – encryption and decryption⁴⁹ in accordance
1456 with a specified cryptographic algorithm Triple-DES and AES⁵⁰ and cryptographic key
1457 sizes Triple-DES:112, AES: 128, 192 and 256 bits⁵¹ that meet the following:[17]⁵².

1458 **21. Application note (taken from [5], application note 16)**

1459 This SFR requires the TOE to implement the cryptographic primitives (e.g. Triple-DES and/or
1460 AES) for secure messaging with encryption of the transmitted data. The keys are agreed
1461 between the TOE and the terminal as part of the Chip Authentication Protocol Version 1
1462 according to the FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP.

1463 FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP

1464 Cryptographic operation – Signature verification by electronic document

1465 Hierarchical to: No other components

1466 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1467 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
1468 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
1469 generation] fulfilled by FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP

1470 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1471 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP

1472 FCS_COP.1.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP

1473 The TSF shall perform digital signature verification⁵³ in accordance with a specified
1474 cryptographic algorithm RSA v1.5 with SHA-256 and SHA-512, RSA-PSS with SHA-256
1475 and SHA-512, ECDSA with SHA-256, SHA-224, SHA-384 and SHA-512⁵⁴ and
1476 cryptographic key sizes RSA 2048, 4096 and from 2000 bit to 4096 bit in one bit steps,
1477 ECDSA 160, 192, 224, 256, 320, 384, 521 bits⁵⁵ that meet the following: [25][30]⁵⁶.

1478 **22. Application note (redefined by ST author, taken from [5], application note 17)**

1479 Applied.

1480 **23. Application note (from ST author)**

⁴⁹ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

⁵⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

⁵¹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁵² [assignment: *list of standards*]

⁵³ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

⁵⁴ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

⁵⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁵⁶ [assignment: *list of standards*]

1481 The TOE based on the Platform functionalities supports RSA and RSA-CRT and ECDSA
 1482 signature algorithms and cryptographic key length 1024 bits up to 4096 bits and 160 bits to
 1483 521 bits (ECDS).). These key lengths are supported with equivalent implementation-level security
 1484 measures. However, to defend against attackers with high attack potential the actual key
 1485 length chosen for use during the operational phase must be appropriate and in line with current
 1486 cryptographic recommendations. When selecting the key length, consideration must be given
 1487 to the expected lifetime of the TOE to ensure that the chosen cryptographic strength remains
 1488 sufficient throughout the entire operational lifespan.

1489 [FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP](#)
 1490 [Cryptographic operation – MAC](#)

1491 Hierarchical to: No other components

1492 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
 1493 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
 1494 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
 1495 generation] fulfilled by [FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP](#)

1496 [FCS_CKM.4](#) Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
 1497 [FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP](#)

1498 [FCS_COP.1.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP](#)

1499 The TSF shall perform secure messaging – message authentication code⁵⁷ in accordance
 1500 with a specified cryptographic algorithm CMAC or Retail-MAC⁵⁸ and cryptographic key
 1501 sizes 112, 128, 192 and 256 bits⁵⁹ that meet the following: [17]⁶⁰.

1502 [24. Application note \(taken from \[5\], application note 18\)](#)

1503 This SFR requires the TOE to implement the cryptographic primitive for secure messaging with
 1504 encryption and message authentication code over the transmitted data. The key is agreed
 1505 between the TSF by Chip Authentication Protocol Version 1 according to the
 1506 [FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP](#). Furthermore, the SFR is used for authentication attempts of a
 1507 terminal as Personalisation Agent by means of the authentication mechanism.

1508 The following SFRs are defined because the TOE supports the Chip Authentication version 2
 1509 and Restricted Identification key pair(s) generation on the TOE as described in
 1510 [FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP](#).

1511 [FCS_CKM.1/CA2](#)
 1512 [Cryptographic key generation – Chip Authentication version 2 Key pair\(s\)](#)

⁵⁷ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

⁵⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

⁵⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁶⁰ [assignment: *list of standards*]

- 1513 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 1514 Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution or
1515 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation]
1516 fulfilled by FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP and
1517 FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP
- 1518 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1519 FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP
- 1520 FCS_CKM.1.1/CA2
- 1521 The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys **to Chip Authentication 2** in accordance with a
1522 specified cryptographic key generation algorithm RSA or ECC⁶¹ and specified cryptographic
1523 key sizes 1024, 1280, 1536, 1984, 2048, 3072 and 4096 bits or 160, 192, 224, 256, 384 and
1524 521 bits⁶² that meet the following: [32]⁶³.
- 1525 **25. Application note (from ST author)**
- 1526 The TOE supports to create Chip Authentication version 2 Key pair(s) on the TOE as described
1527 in FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP. The TOE generates the key pair(s) in secure way, but the
1528 appropriate key size shall be assessed during the personalization of the TOE.
1529 The refinement was necessary for the sake of clarity.
- 1530 **FCS_CKM.1/RI**
1531 Cryptographic key generation – Restricted Identification Key pair (s)
- 1532 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 1533 Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution or
1534 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] not fulfilled but
1535 justified: the cryptographic part of Restricted
1536 Identification protocol is not part of the TOE, so no
1537 cryptographic operation is related to FCS_CKM.1/RI.
1538 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1539 FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP
- 1540 FCS_CKM.1.1/RI
- 1541 The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys **to Restricted Identification** in accordance with a
1542 specified cryptographic key generation algorithm RSA or ECC⁶⁴ and specified cryptographic

⁶¹ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

⁶² [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁶³ [assignment: *list of standards*]

⁶⁴ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

1543 key sizes 1024, 1280, 1536, 1984, 2048, 3072 and 4096 bits or 160, 192, 224, 256, 384 and
1544 521 bits⁶⁵ that meet the following: [32][18]⁶⁶.

1545 **26. Application note (from ST author)**

1546 The TOE supports to create Restricted Identification Key pair(s) on the TOE as described in
1547 FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP. The TOE generates the key pair(s) in secure way, but the
1548 appropriate key size shall be assessed during the personalization of the TOE.
1549 The refinement was necessary for the sake of clarity.

1550 The following SFRs are new and concern cryptographic support for ePassport application in
1551 combination with [5] in case the Active Authentication protocol is active:

- 1552 • **FCS_CKM.1/AA**
- 1553 • **FCS_COP.1/AA**

1554 **FCS_CKM.1/AA**
1555 Cryptographic key generation – Active Authentication Key Pair

1556 Hierarchical to: No other components

1557 Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution or
1558 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation]
1559 fulfilled by FCS_COP.1/AA

1560 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1561 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP

1562 **FCS_CKM.1.1/AA**

1563 The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key
1564 generation algorithm RSA or ECDSA⁶⁷ and specified cryptographic key sizes 2048, 3072 and
1565 4096 bits or 160, 192, 224, 256, 384 and 521 bits⁶⁸ that meet the following: [7][9]⁶⁹.

1566 **FCS_COP.1/AA**
1567 Cryptographic operation – Active Authentication

1568 Hierarchical to: No other components

1569 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1570 attributes, FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security

⁶⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁶⁶ [assignment: *list of standards*]

⁶⁷ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

⁶⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁶⁹ [assignment: *list of standards*]

1571 attribute or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
1572 fulfilled by FCS_CKM.1/AA

1573 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction fulfilled by
1574 FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP

1575 FCS_COP.1.1/AA

1576 The TSF shall perform digital signature creation⁷⁰ in accordance with a specified
1577 cryptographic algorithm RSA or ECDSA⁷¹ and . cryptographic key sizes RSA with key
1578 sizes 2048-4096 and ECDSA with key sizes 160, 192, 224, 256, 384 and 521⁷² that meet
1579 the following: [7][9]⁷³.

1580 **27. Application note (from ST author)**

1581 The TOE based on the Platform functionalities supports RSA and RSA-CRT and ECDSA
1582 signature algorithms and cryptographic key length 1024bits up to 4096 bits and 160 bits to
1583 521 bits (ECDS).). These key lengths are supported with equivalent implementation-level security
1584 measures. However, to defend against attackers with high attack potential the actual key
1585 length chosen for use during the operational phase must be appropriate and in line with current
1586 cryptographic recommendations. When selecting the key length, consideration must be given
1587 to the expected lifetime of the TOE to ensure that the chosen cryptographic strength remains
1588 sufficient throughout the entire operational lifespan.

1589 The following SFRs are new and concerns cryptographic support for ePassport applications in
1590 combination with [5].

- 1591 • **FCS_CKM.1/CAM**
- 1592 • **FCS_COP.1/CAM**

1593 FCS_CKM.1/CAM

1594 Cryptographic key generation – PACE-CAM public key and Diffie-Hellman for General Mapping in
1595 PACE-GM

1596 Hierarchical to: No other components

1597 Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution or
1598 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation]
1599 fulfilled by FCS_COP.1/CAM

⁷⁰ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

⁷¹ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

⁷² [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁷³ [assignment: *list of standards*]

1600 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
1601 fulfilled by FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP

1602 FCS_CKM.1.1/CAM

1603 The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic
1604 key generation algorithm PACE-CAM in combination with PACE-GM⁷⁴ and specified
1605 cryptographic key sizes AES 128, 192 and 256 bit⁷⁵ that meet the following: [9]⁷⁶.

1606 **28. Application note (from ST author)**

1607 In the combined protocol PACE-CAM, after the completion of PACE in combination with the
1608 general mapping (PACE-GM), the chip authenticates itself by adding (multiplying) the
1609 randomly chosen nonce of the GM step with the inverse of the chip authentication secret key,
1610 and sends this value together with chip authentication public key to the card; cf.[9].

1611 FCS_COP.1/CAM
1612 Cryptographic operation – PACE-CAM

1613 Hierarchical to: No other components

1614 Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security
1615 attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with
1616 security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key
1617 generation]
1618 fulfilled by FCS_CKM.1/CAM

1619 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
1620 fulfilled by FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP

1621 FCS_COP.1.1/CAM

1622 The TSF shall perform the PACE-CAM protocol⁷⁷ in accordance with a specified
1623 cryptographic algorithm PACE-CAM⁷⁸ and cryptographic key sizes AES 128, 192 and 256
1624 bits⁷⁹ that meet the following: [9]⁸⁰

1625 **29. Application note (from ST author)**

⁷⁴ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

⁷⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁷⁶ [assignment: *list of standards*]

⁷⁷ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

⁷⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

⁷⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

⁸⁰ [assignment: *list of standards*]

1626 Whereas FCS_CKM.1/CAM addresses the Diffie-Hellman based key-derivation, this SFR is
 1627 concerned with the correct implementation and execution of the whole PACE-CAM protocol.
 1628 Note that in particular the last protocol step to authenticate the chip towards the terminal is an
 1629 essential part of the protocol, and not addressed in FCS_CKM.1/CAM.

1630 **6.1.2. Class FIA**

1631 Table 10 provides an overview of the authentication and identification mechanisms used.

Name	SFR for the TOE
PACE protocol	FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP
	FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP
	FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP
	FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP
	FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP
	FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP
PACE-CAM protocol	SFRs above for the PACE part; in addition, for the Chip Authentication Mapping (CAM): FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP
Terminal Authentication Protocol version 2	FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP
Chip Authentication Protocol version 2	FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP
	FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP
	FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP
Terminal Authentication Protocol version 1	FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP
	FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP
Chip Authentication Protocol version 1	FIA_API.1/EAC1PP
	FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP
	FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP
Active Authentication	FIA_API.1/AA
	FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP
	FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP
Restricted Identification	FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP

1632 **Table 10 Overview of authentication and identification SFRs**

1633 **6.1.2.1. SFRs for EAC2-protected Data**

1634 The following SFRs are imported due to claiming [6]. They mainly concern authentication
 1635 mechanisms related to applications with EAC2-protected data.

- 1636 • **FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP**
- 1637 • **FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP**
- 1638 • **FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP**
- 1639 • **FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP**
- 1640 • **FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP**

- 1641 • **FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP**

1642 **30. Application note (from ST author)**

1643 The user identified after a successfully performed TA2 protocol is an EAC2 terminal. Note that
1644 TA1 is covered by FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP. In that case, the terminal identified is in addition
1645 also an EAC1 terminal.

- 1646 • **FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP**
- 1647 • **FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP**
- 1648 • **FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP**

1649 **31. Application note (taken from [6], application note 26)**

1650 For PACE, the TOE randomly selects an almost uniformly distributed nonce of 128 bit length.
1651 The current ST support a key derivation function based on AES; see [18]. For TA2, the TOE
1652 randomly selects a nonce r_{PICC} of 64 bit length, see [18]. This SFR extends
1653 FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP from [13] by assigning the authentication mechanism Terminal
1654 Authentication 2.

- 1655 • **FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP**
- 1656 • **FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP**
- 1657 • **FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP**
- 1658 • **FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP**

1659 FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP
1660 Authentication failure handling – Suspending PIN

1661 Hierarchical to: No other components

1662 Dependencies: [FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication] fulfilled by
1663 FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP

1664 FIA_AFL.1.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP

1665 The TSF shall detect when an administrator configurable positive integer within [1-127]⁸¹
1666 unsuccessful authentication attempts occur related to consecutive failed authentication
1667 attempts using the PIN as the shared password for PACE⁸².

1668 FIA_AFL.1.2/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP

⁸¹[selection: [assignment: positive integer number], an administrator configurable positive integer within [assignment: range of acceptable values]]

⁸² [assignment: list of authentication events]

1669 When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met⁸³, the
1670 TSF shall suspend the reference value of the PIN according to [18]⁸⁴.

1671 **32. Application note (taken from [6], application note 19)**

1672 This SFR is not in conflict to FIA_AFL.1 from [13], since it just adds a requirement specific to
1673 the case where the PIN is the shared password. Thus, the assigned integer number for
1674 unsuccessful authentication attempts with any PACE password could be different to the integer
1675 for the case when using a PIN.

1676 FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP
1677 Authentication failure handling - Blocking PIN

1678 Hierarchical to: No other components

1679 Dependencies: [FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication] fulfilled by
1680 FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP

1681 FIA_AFL.1.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP

1682 The TSF shall detect when an administrator configurable positive integer within [1-127]⁸⁵
1683 unsuccessful authentication attempts occur related to consecutive failed authentication
1684 attempts using the suspended⁸⁶ PIN as the shared password for PACE⁸⁷.

1685 FIA_AFL.1.2/Block_PIN_EAC2PP

1686 When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met⁸⁸, the
1687 TSF shall block the reference value of PIN according to [18]⁸⁹.

1688 FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP
1689 Authentication Proof of Identity

1690 Hierarchical to: No other components

1691 Dependencies: No dependencies

1692 FIA_API.1.1/CA_EAC2PP

⁸³ [selection: *met*, *surpassed*]

⁸⁴ [assignment: *list of actions*]

⁸⁵ [selection: [assignment: *positive integer number*], *an administrator configurable positive integer within [assignment: *range of acceptable values*]]*

⁸⁶ as required by FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP

⁸⁷ [assignment: *list of authentication events*]

⁸⁸ [selection: *met*, *surpassed*]

⁸⁹ [assignment: *list of actions*]

1693 The TSF shall provide the protocol Chip Authentication 2 according to [18]⁹⁰, to prove the
1694 identity of the TOE⁹¹.

1695 FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP
1696 Authentication Proof of Identity

1697 Hierarchical to: No other components

1698 Dependencies: No dependencies

1699 FIA_API.1.1/RI_EAC2PP

1700 The TSF shall provide the Restricted Identification protocol according to [18]⁹², to prove
1701 the identity of the TOE⁹³.

1702 **33. Application note (taken from [6], application note 20)**

1703 Restricted Identification provides a sector-specific identifier of every electronic document. It
1704 thus provides a pseudonymous way to identify the Electronic Document Holder in a case where
1705 the CHAT of the terminal does not allow to access Sensitive User Data that directly identify the
1706 Electronic Document Holder. Restricted Identification shall only be used after successfully
1707 running Terminal Authentication 2 and Chip Authentication 2. Note that Restricted Identification
1708 is optional according to [18], and thus the above SFR only applies if Restricted Identification is
1709 supported by the TOE.

1710 FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP
1711 Timing of identification

1712 Hierarchical to: No other components

1713 Dependencies: No dependencies

1714 FIA_UID.1.1/PACE_EAC2PP

1715 The TSF shall allow:

- 1716 1. to establish a communication channel.
- 1717 2. carrying out the PACE protocol according to [18]
- 1718 3. to read the Initialization Data if it is not disabled by TSF according to
1719 ~~FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS~~FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP⁹⁴

⁹⁰ [assignment: *authentication mechanism*]

⁹¹ [assignment: *authorised user or role, or of the TOE itself*]

⁹² [assignment: *authentication mechanism*]

⁹³ [assignment: *authorized user or role*]

⁹⁴ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

1720 4. none⁹⁵

1721 on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.

1722 FIA_UID.1.2/PACE_EAC2PP

1723 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other
1724 TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

1725 **34. Application note (taken from [6], application note 21)**

1726 The user identified after a successful run of PACE is a PACE terminal. In case the PIN or PUK
1727 were used for PACE, the user identified is the Electronic Document Holder using a PACE
1728 terminal. Note that neither the CAN nor the MRZ effectively represent secrets, but are
1729 restricted-revealable; i.e. in case the CAN or the MRZ were used for PACE, it is either the
1730 Electronic Document Holder itself, an authorized person other than the Electronic Document
1731 Holder, or a device.

1732 **35. Application note (from ST author)**

1733 The refinement was necessary to ensure unified terminology usage of SFRs.

1734 FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP

1735 Timing of identification

1736 Hierarchical to: No other components

1737 Dependencies: No dependencies

1738 FIA_UID.1.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP

1739 The TSF shall allow

1740 1. to establish a communication channel,

1741 2. carrying out the PACE protocol according to [18],

1742 3. to read the Initialization Data if it is not disabled by TSF according to

1743 ~~FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS~~FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP

1744 4. carrying out the Terminal Authentication protocol 2 according to [18]⁹⁶

1745 5. none⁹⁷

1746 on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.

1747 FIA_UID.1.2/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP

⁹⁵ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

⁹⁶ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

⁹⁷ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

1748 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other
1749 TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

1750 **36. Application note (taken from [6], application note 22)**

1751 The user identified after a successfully performed TA2 is an EAC2 terminal. The types of EAC2
1752 terminals are application dependent;

1753 **37. Application note (taken from [6], application note 23)**

1754 In the life cycle phase manufacturing, the manufacturer is the only user role known to the TOE.
1755 The manufacturer writes the initialization data and/or pre-personalization data in the audit
1756 records of the IC.

1757 Note that a Personalization Agent acts on behalf of the electronic document issuer under his
1758 and the CSCA's and DS's policies. Hence, they define authentication procedures for
1759 Personalization Agents. The TOE must functionally support these authentication procedures.
1760 These procedures are subject to evaluation within the assurance components ALC_DEL.1 and
1761 AGD_PRE.1. The TOE assumes the user role Personalization Agent, if a terminal proves the
1762 respective Terminal Authorization level (e. g. a privileged terminal, cf. [18]).

1763 **38. Application note (from ST author)**

1764 The refinement was necessary to ensure unified terminology usage of SFRs.

1765 **FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP**
1766 **Timing of authentication**

1767 Hierarchical to: No other components

1768 Dependencies: [FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification]: fulfilled by
1769 FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP

1770 **FIA_UAU.1.1/PACE_EAC2PP**

1771 The TSF shall allow:

- 1772 1. to establish a communication channel,
- 1773 2. carrying out the PACE protocol according to [18],
- 1774 3. to read the Initialization Data if it is not disabled by TSF according to
1775 ~~FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS~~FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP,
- 1776 4. none⁹⁸

1777 on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

1778 **FIA_UAU.1.2/PACE_EAC2PP**

⁹⁸ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

1779 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other
1780 TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

1781 **39. Application note (taken from [6], application note 24)**

1782 If PACE has been successfully performed, secure messaging is started using the derived
1783 session keys (PACE- K_{MAC} , PACE- K_{Enc}), cf. FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP. 37. Application note
1784 (taken from [6], application note 23) also applies here.

1785 **40. Application note (from ST author)**

1786 The refinement was necessary to ensure unified terminology usage of SFRs.

1787 FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP
1788 Timing of authentication

1789 Hierarchical to: No other components

1790 Dependencies: [FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification]: fulfilled by
1791 FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP

1792 FIA_UAU.1.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP

1793 The TSF shall allow:

- 1794 1. to establish a communication channel.
- 1795 2. carrying out the PACE protocol according to [18].
- 1796 3. to read the Initialization Data if it is not disabled by TSF according to
1797 **FMT_MTD.1/INI_DISFMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP**
- 1798 4. carrying out the Terminal Authentication protocol 2 according to [18]⁹⁹

1799 on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

1800 FIA_UAU.1.2/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP

1801 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other
1802 TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

1803 **41. Application note (taken from [6], application note 25)**

1804 The user authenticated after a successful run of TA2 is an EAC2 terminal. The authenticated
1805 terminal will immediately perform Chip Authentication 2 as required by
1806 FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP using, amongst other, Comp(ephem-PK_{PCD}-TA) from the
1807 accomplished TA2. Note that Passive Authentication using SO_C is considered to be part of
1808 CA2 within this ST.

⁹⁹ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

1809 **42. Application note (from ST author)**

1810 The refinement was necessary to ensure unified terminology usage of SFRs.

1811 FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP

1812 Single-use authentication of the Terminals by the TOE

1813 Hierarchical to: No other components

1814 Dependencies: No dependencies

1815 FIA_UAU.4.1/PACE_EAC2PP

1816 The TSF shall prevent reuse of authentication data related to:

- 1817 1. PACE protocol according to [18],
- 1818 2. Authentication Mechanism based on AES¹⁰⁰
- 1819 3. Terminal Authentication 2 protocol according to [18].¹⁰¹
- 1820 4. none¹⁰²

1821 **43. Application note (taken from [6], application note 26)**

1822 For PACE, the TOE randomly selects an almost uniformly distributed nonce of 128 bit length.
 1823 The [6] supports a key derivation function based on AES; see [18]. For TA2, the TOE randomly
 1824 selects a nonce r_{PICC} of 64 bit length, see [18]. This SFR extends FIA_UAU.4/PACE from [13]
 1825 by assigning the authentication mechanism Terminal Authentication 2.

1826 FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP

1827 Multiple authentication mechanisms

1828 Hierarchical to: No other components

1829 Dependencies: No dependencies

1830 FIA_UAU.5.1/PACE_EAC2PP

1831 The TSF shall provide

- 1832 1. PACE protocol according to [18],
- 1833 2. Passive Authentication according to [8]
- 1834 3. Secure messaging in ~~MAC-ENC~~ mode according to [19]
- 1835 4. Symmetric Authentication Mechanism based on TDES and AES¹⁰³¹⁰⁴

¹⁰⁰ [selection: ~~Triple-DES~~, AES or other approved algorithms]

¹⁰¹ [assignment: identified authentication mechanism(s)]

¹⁰² [assignment: identified authentication mechanism(s)]

¹⁰³ restricting the [selection: Triple-DES, AES or other approved algorithms]

¹⁰⁴ [selection: AES or other approved algorithms]

- 1836 5. Terminal Authentication 2 protocol according to [18],
 1837 6. Chip Authentication 2 according to [18]¹⁰⁵¹⁰⁶
 1838 7. none¹⁰⁷

1839 to support user authentication.

1840 FIA_UAU.5.2/PACE_EAC2PP

1841 The TSF shall authenticate any user's claimed identity according to the following rules:

- 1842 1. Having successfully run the PACE protocol the TOE accepts only received
 1843 commands with correct message authentication codes sent by secure messaging
 1844 with the key agreed with the terminal by the PACE protocol.
 1845 2. The TOE accepts the authentication attempt as Personalization Agent by
 1846 Symmetric Authentication (Device authentication) according to [31]¹⁰⁸
 1847 3. The TOE accepts the authentication attempt by means of the Terminal
 1848 Authentication 2 protocol, only if (i) the terminal presents its static public key PK_{PCD}
 1849 and the key is successfully verifiable up to the CVCA and (ii) the terminal uses the
 1850 PICC identifier $IDP_{ICC} = \text{Comp}(\text{ephem-PK}_{PICC}\text{-PACE})$ calculated during, and the
 1851 secure messaging established by the, current PACE authentication.
 1852 4. Having successfully run Chip Authentication 2, the TOE accepts only received
 1853 commands with correct message authentication codes sent by secure messaging
 1854 with the key agreed with the terminal by Chip Authentication 2.¹⁰⁹
 1855 5. none¹¹⁰

1856 **44. Application note (taken from [6], application note 27)**

1857 Refinement of FIA_UAU.5.2/PACE_EAC2PP, since here PACE must adhere to [18] and [19],
 1858 cf. 5. Application note (taken from [6], application note 10). Since the formulation "MAC-ENC
 1859 mode" is slightly ambiguous (there is only one secure messaging mode relevant both in [13]
 1860 and here, and it is actually the same in both references), it is removed here by refinement in
 1861 the third bullet point of FIA_UAU.5.1/PACE_EAC2PP.

1862 Remark: Note that 5. and 6. in FIA_UAU.5.1/PACE_EAC2PP and 3. and 4. of
 1863 FIA_UAU.5.2/PACE_EAC2PP are additional assignments (using the open assignment
 1864 operation) compared to [13].

1865 **45. Application note (from ST author)**

¹⁰⁵ Passive Authentication using SO_C is considered to be part of CA2 within this ST.

¹⁰⁶ [assignment: *list of multiple authentication mechanisms*]

¹⁰⁷ [assignment: *list of multiple authentication mechanisms*]

¹⁰⁸ [selection: *the Authentication Mechanism with Personalization Agent Key(s)*]

¹⁰⁹ [assignment: *rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication*]

¹¹⁰ [assignment: *rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication*]

- 1866 Symmetric Authentication Mechanism implemented according to [31].
- 1867 FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP
1868 Re-authenticating of Terminal by the TOE
- 1869 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 1870 Dependencies: No dependencies
- 1871 FIA_UAU.6.1/CA_EAC2PP
- 1872 The TSF shall re-authenticate the user under the conditions each command sent to the
1873 TOE after a successful run of Chip Authentication 2 shall be verified as being sent by the
1874 EAC2 terminal¹¹¹.
- 1875 FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP
1876 Authentication failure handling – PACE authentication using non-blocking authorisation data
- 1877 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 1878 Dependencies: [FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication]: fulfilled by
1879 FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP
- 1880 FIA_AFL.1.1/PACE_EAC2PP
- 1881 The TSF shall detect when configurable positive integer within [1-127]¹¹² unsuccessful
1882 authentication attempt occurs related to authentication attempts using the PACE
1883 password as shared password.¹¹³
- 1884 FIA_AFL.1.2/PACE_EAC2PP
- 1885 When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met¹¹⁴, the
1886 TSF shall delay each following authentication attempt until the next successful
1887 authentication.¹¹⁵
- 1888 **46. Application note (from ST author)**
- 1889 In line with [6] the shared password for PACE can be CAN, MRZ, PIN and PUK. The specific
1890 case of PIN is detailed in FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP and
1891 FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP and furthermore 32. Application note (taken from [6],
1892 application note 19).

¹¹¹ [assignment: list of conditions under which re-authentication is required]

¹¹² [assignment: positive integer number]

¹¹³ [assignment: list of authentication events]

¹¹⁴ [selection: met ,surpassed]

¹¹⁵ [assignment: list of actions]

1893 [47. Application note \(from ST author\)](#)

1894 The configurable value for the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts is set by the
1895 Personalization Agent during the personalization phase of the TOE. This configuration is
1896 enforced by the TSF during the operational phase of the TOE.

1897 [48. Application note \(taken from \[13\], application note 32.\)](#)

1898 Applied.

1899 FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP

1900 Re-authenticating of Terminal by the TOE

1901 Hierarchical to: No other components

1902 Dependencies: No dependencies

1903 FIA_UAU.6.1/PACE_EAC2PP

1904 The TSF shall re-authenticate the user under the conditions each command sent to the
1905 TOE after successful run of the PACE protocol shall be verified as being sent by the PACE
1906 terminal.¹¹⁶

1907 **6.1.2.2. SFRs for EAC1-protected data**

- 1908 • FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP
- 1909 • FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP
- 1910 • FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP
- 1911 • FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP
- 1912 • FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1PP

1913 (equivalent to FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

- 1914 • FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP
- 1915 • FIA_API.1/EAC1PP
- 1916 • FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP

1917 (equivalent to FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

1918 FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP

1919 Timing of identification

1920 Hierarchical to: No other components

¹¹⁶ [assignment: *list of conditions under which re-authentication is required*]

1921 Dependencies: No dependencies

1922 FIA_UID.1.1/PACE_EAC1PP

1923 The TSF shall allow:

- 1924 1. to establish the communication channel,
- 1925 2. carrying out the PACE Protocol according to [7],
- 1926 3. to read the Initialization Data if it is not disabled by TSF according to
1927 **FMT_MTD.1/INI DIS-FMT_MTD.1/INI DIS EAC1PP**
- 1928 4. to carry out the Chip Authentication Protocol v.1 according to [17] or the Chip
1929 **Authentication mapping (PACE-CAM) according to [9].**
- 1930 5. to carry out the Terminal Authentication Protocol v.1 according to [17] resp.
1931 **according to [9] if PACE-CAM is used.**¹¹⁷
- 1932 6. none¹¹⁸.

1933 on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.

1934 FIA_UID.1.2/PACE_EAC1PP

1935 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other
1936 TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

1937 **49. Application note (from ST author)**

1938 The SFR is refined here in order for the TSF to *additionally* provide the PACE-CAM protocol
1939 by referencing [9]. PACE-CAM combines PACE and Chip Authentication 1 for faster execution
1940 times. Hence, a TOE meeting the original requirement also meets the refined requirement.

1941 **50. Application note (taken from [5], application note 20)**

1942 The SFR FIA_UID.1/PACE in [5] covers the definition in [13] and extends it by EAC aspect 4.
1943 This extension does not conflict with the strict conformance to [13].

1944 **51. Application note (taken from [5], application note 21)**

1945 In the Phase 2 “Manufacturing” the Manufacturer is the only user role known to the TOE which
1946 writes the Initialization Data and/or Pre-personalisation Data in the audit records of the IC. The
1947 electronic document manufacturer may create the user role Personalisation Agent for transition
1948 from Phase 2 to Phase 3 “Personalisation of the Electronic Document”. The users in role
1949 Personalisation Agent identify themselves by means of selecting the authentication key. After
1950 personalisation in the Phase 3 the PACE domain parameters, the Chip Authentication data
1951 and Terminal Authentication Reference Data are written into the TOE. The Inspection System
1952 is identified as default user after power up or reset of the TOE i.e. the TOE will run the PACE

¹¹⁷ [assignment: list of TSF-mediated actions]

¹¹⁸ [assignment: list of TSF-mediated actions]

1953 protocol, to gain access to the Chip Authentication Reference Data and to run the Chip
1954 Authentication Protocol Version 1. After successful authentication of the chip the terminal may
1955 identify itself as (i) EAC1 terminal by selection of the templates for the Terminal Authentication
1956 Protocol Version 1 or (ii) if necessary and available by authentication as Personalisation Agent
1957 (using the Personalisation Agent Key).

1958 [52. Application note \(taken from \[5\], application note 22\)](#)

1959 User identified after a successfully performed PACE protocol is a terminal. Please note that
1960 neither CAN nor MRZ effectively represent secrets, but are restricted revealable; i.e. it is either
1961 the electronic document holder itself or an authorised other person or device (PACE terminal).

1962 [53. Application note \(taken from \[5\], application note 23\)](#)

1963 In the life-cycle phase 'Manufacturing' the Manufacturer is the only user role known to the TOE.
1964 The Manufacturer writes the Initialisation Data and/or Pre-personalisation Data in the audit
1965 records of the IC.

1966 Please note that a Personalisation Agent acts on behalf of the electronic document Issuer
1967 under his and CSCA and DS policies. Hence, they define authentication procedure(s) for
1968 Personalisation Agents. The TOE must functionally support these authentication procedures
1969 being subject to evaluation within the assurance components ALC_DEL.1 and AGD_PRE.1.
1970 The TOE assumes the user role 'Personalisation Agent', when a terminal proves the respective
1971 Terminal Authorisation Level as defined by the related policy (policies).

1972 [54. Application note \(from ST author\)](#)

1973 The refinement was necessary to ensure unified terminology usage of SFRs.

1974 FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP
1975 Timing of authentication

1976 Hierarchical to: No other components

1977 Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification fulfilled by
1978 FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP

1979 FIA_UAU.1.1/PACE_EAC1PP

1980 The TSF shall allow:

- 1981 1. to establish the communication channel,
- 1982 2. carrying out the PACE Protocol according to [7],
- 1983 3. to read the Initialization Data if it is not disabled by TSF according to
1984 ~~FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS-FMT_MTD.1/INI DIS EAC1PP,~~
- 1985 4. to identify themselves by selection of the authentication key
- 1986 5. to carry out the Chip Authentication Protocol Version 1 according to [17]

- 1987 6. to carry out the Terminal Authentication Protocol Version 1 according to [17]¹¹⁹
- 1988 7. to carry out the Active Authentication Mechanism according to [9]¹²⁰
- 1989 on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.
- 1990 FIA_UAU.1.2/PACE_EAC1PP
- 1991 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other
- 1992 TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.
- 1993 **55. Application note (taken from [5], application note 24)**
- 1994 The SFR FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP in the current ST covers the definition in [13] and
- 1995 extends it by EAC aspect 5. This extension does not conflict with the strict conformance to
- 1996 [13].
- 1997 **56. Application note (taken from [5], application note 25)**
- 1998 The user authenticated after a successfully performed PACE protocol is a terminal. Please
- 1999 note that neither CAN nor MRZ effectively represent secrets but are restricted revealable; i.e.
- 2000 it is either the electronic document holder itself or an authorised another person or device
- 2001 (PACE terminal).
- 2002 If PACE was successfully performed, secure messaging is started using the derived session
- 2003 keys (PACE-K_{MAC}, PACE-K_{Enc}), cf. FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP.
- 2004 **57. Application note (from ST author)**
- 2005 The refinement was necessary to ensure unified terminology usage of SFRs.
- 2006 FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP
- 2007 Single-use authentication mechanisms - Single-use authentication of the Terminal by the TOE
- 2008 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 2009 Dependencies: No dependencies
- 2010 FIA_UAU.4.1/PACE_EAC1PP
- 2011 The TSF shall prevent reuse of authentication data related to
- 2012 1. PACE Protocol according to [7],
- 2013 2. Authentication Mechanism based on Triple-DES or AES¹²¹
- 2014 3. Terminal Authentication Protocol v.1 according to [17].¹²²

¹¹⁹ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

¹²⁰ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

¹²¹ [selection: *Triple-DES, AES or other approved algorithms*]

¹²² [assignment: *identified authentication mechanism(s)*]

2015 **4. Active Authentication protocol according to [7], [9]**

2016 **58. Application note (taken from [5], application note 26)**

2017 The SFR FIA_UAU.4.1/PACE_EAC1PP in the current ST covers the definition in [13] and
 2018 extends it by the EAC aspect 3. This extension does not conflict with the strict conformance to
 2019 [13]. The generation of random numbers (random nonce) used for the authentication protocol
 2020 (PACE) and Terminal Authentication as required by FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP is required
 2021 by FCS_RND.1 from [13].

2022 **59. Application note (taken from [5], application note 27)**

2023 The authentication mechanisms may use either a challenge freshly and randomly generated
 2024 by the TOE to prevent reuse of a response generated by a terminal in a successful
 2025 authentication attempt. However, the authentication of Personalisation Agent may rely on other
 2026 mechanisms ensuring protection against replay attacks, such as the use of an internal counter
 2027 as a diversifier.

2028 **60. Application note (ST author)**

2029 The refinement was necessary because the authentication data (nonce) is must not be reused
 2030 during Active Authentication protocol according to [9].

2031 FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP
 2032 Multiple authentication mechanisms

2033 Hierarchical to: No other components

2034 Dependencies: No dependencies

2035 FIA_UAU.5.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2036 The TSF shall provide

- 2037 1. PACE Protocol according to [7] and PACE-CAM protocol according to [9]
- 2038 2. Passive Authentication according to [8]
- 2039 3. Secure messaging in MAC-ENC mode according to [7].
- 2040 4. Symmetric Authentication Mechanism based on Triple-DES or AES¹²³
- 2041 5. Terminal Authentication Protocol v.1 according to [17].¹²⁴

2042 to support user authentication

2043 FIA_UAU.5.2/PACE_EAC1PP

2044 The TSF shall authenticate any user’s claimed identity according to the following rules:

¹²³ [selection: *Triple-DES, AES or other approved algorithms*]
¹²⁴ [assignment: *list of multiple authentication mechanism*]

- 2045 1. Having successfully run the PACE protocol the TOE accepts only received
 2046 commands with correct message authentication code sent by means of secure
 2047 messaging with the key agreed with the terminal by means of the PACE protocol.
 2048 2. The TOE accepts the authentication attempt as Personalisation Agent by the
 2049 Symmetric Authentication (Device authentication) according to [31]¹²⁵
 2050 3. After run of the Chip Authentication Protocol Version 1 the TOE accepts only
 2051 received commands with correct message authentication code sent by means of
 2052 secure messaging with key agreed with the terminal by means of the Chip
 2053 Authentication Mechanism v1.
 2054 4. The TOE accepts the authentication attempt by means of the Terminal
 2055 Authentication Protocol v.1 only if the terminal uses the public key presented during
 2056 the Chip Authentication Protocol v.1 and the secure messaging established by the
 2057 Chip Authentication Mechanism v.1. or if the terminal uses the public key
 2058 **presented during PACE-CAM and the secure messaging established during**
 2059 **PACE.**¹²⁶
 2060 5. none¹²⁷

2061 **61. Application note (from ST author)**

2062 The SFR is refined here in order for the TSF to additionally provide the PACE-CAM protocol
 2063 by referencing [9]. PACE-CAM combines PACE and Chip Authentication 1 for faster execution
 2064 times. Hence, a TOE meeting the original requirement also meets the refined requirement.

2065 **62. Application note (taken from [5], application note 28)**

2066 The SFR FIA_UAU.5.1/PACE_EAC1PP in the current ST covers the definition in [13] and
 2067 extends it by EAC aspects 4), 5), and 6). The SFR FIA_UAU.5.2/PACE_EAC1PP in the current
 2068 ST covers the definition in [13] and extends it by EAC aspects 2), 3), 4) and 5). These
 2069 extensions do not conflict with the strict conformance to [13].

2070 **FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP**

2071 **Re-authenticating – Re-authenticating of Terminal by the TOE**

2072 Hierarchical to: No other components

2073 Dependencies: No dependencies

2074 **FIA_UAU.6.1/EAC_EAC1PP**

¹²⁵ [selection: *the Authentication Mechanism with Personalisation Agent Key(s)*]

¹²⁶ [assignment: *rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication*]

¹²⁷ [assignment: *rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication*]

2075 The TSF shall re-authenticate the user under the conditions each command sent to the
 2076 TOE after successful run of the Chip Authentication Protocol Version 1 shall be verified as
 2077 being sent by the Inspection System.¹²⁸

2078 **63. Application note (taken from [5], application note 29)**

2079 The Password Authenticated Connection Establishment and the Chip Authentication Protocol
 2080 specified in [8] include secure messaging for all commands exchanged after successful
 2081 authentication of the Inspection System. The TOE checks by secure messaging in MAC_ENC
 2082 mode each command based on a corresponding MAC algorithm whether it was sent by the
 2083 successfully authenticated terminal (see FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP for further details).
 2084 The TOE does not execute any command with incorrect message authentication code.

2085 Therefore the TOE re-authenticates the user for each received command and accepts only
 2086 those commands received from the previously authenticated user.

2087 **FIA_API.1/EAC1PP**
 2088 **Authentication Proof of Identity**

2089 Hierarchical to: No other components

2090 Dependencies: No dependencies

2091 **FIA_API.1.1/EAC1PP**

2092 The TSF shall provide a Chip Authentication Protocol Version 1 according to [17]¹²⁹ to
 2093 prove the identity of the TOE.¹³⁰

2094 **64. Application note (taken from [5], application note 30)**

2095 This SFR requires the TOE to implement the Chip Authentication Mechanism v.1 specified in
 2096 [17]. The TOE and the terminal generate a shared secret using the Diffie-Hellman Protocol
 2097 (DH or ECDH) and two session keys for secure messaging in ENC_MAC mode according to
 2098 [8]. The terminal verifies by means of secure messaging whether the electronic document's
 2099 chip was able or not to run his protocol properly using its Chip Authentication Private Key
 2100 corresponding to the Chip Authentication Key (EF.DG14).

2101 The following SFR is newly defined in this ST and addresses the PACE-CAM protocol.

2102 **FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM**
 2103 **Authentication Proof of Identity**

2104 Hierarchical to: No other components

2105 Dependencies: No dependencies

¹²⁸ [assignment: *list of conditions under which re-authentication is required*]

¹²⁹ [assignment: *authentication mechanism*]

¹³⁰ [assignment: *authorized user or role*]

2106 FIA_API.1.1/PACE_CAM

2107 The TSF shall provide a protocol PACE-CAM [9]¹³¹ to prove the identity of the TOE.¹³²

2108 The following SFR is newly defined in this ST and addresses the Active Authentication
2109 protocol:

2110 FIA_API.1/AA
2111 Authentication Proof of Identity

2112 Hierarchical to: No other components

2113 Dependencies: No dependencies

2114 FIA_API.1.1/AA

2115 The TSF shall provide a Active Authentication protocol according to [9]¹³³ to prove the
2116 identity of the TOE.¹³⁴

2117 **6.1.3. Class FDP**

2118 Multiple iterations of FDP_ACF.1 exist from imported PPs to define the access control SFPs
2119 for (common) user data, EAC1-protected user data, and EAC2-protected user data. The
2120 access control SFPs defined in FDP_ACF.1/EAC1PP from [5] and FDP_ACF.1/EAC2PP from
2121 [6] are unified in [21] current ST to one single FDP_ACF.1/TRM. The current ST takes
2122 FDP_ACF.1/EAC2PP as a base definition of functional elements, and it is refined in a way that
2123 it is compatible with FDP_ACF.1/EAC1PP. Hence highlighting refers to changes w.r.t. to
2124 FDP_ACF.1/EAC2PP. In the application note below, how FDP_ACF.1/EAC1PP is covered as
2125 well is explained.

2126 FDP_ACF.1/TRM
2127 Security attribute based access control – Terminal Access

2128 Hierarchical to: No other components

¹³¹ [assignment: *authentication mechanism*]
¹³² [assignment: *authorized user or role, or of the TOE itself*]
¹³³ [assignment: *authentication mechanism*]
¹³⁴ [assignment: *authorized user or role, or of the TOE itself*]

2129 Dependencies: FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control fulfilled by
 2130 FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP and
 2131 FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP

2132 FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialization not fulfilled, but
 2133 **justified:**

2134 The access control TSF according to FDP_ACF.1/TRM
 2135 uses security attributes having been defined during the
 2136 personalization and fixed over the whole life time of the
 2137 TOE. No management of these security attributes (i.e.
 2138 SFR FMT_MSA.1 and FMT_MSA.3) is necessary here.

2139 FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM

2140 The TSF shall enforce the Access Control SFP¹³⁵ to objects based on the following:

- 2141 1) Subjects:
- 2142 a) Terminal,
- 2143 b) **PACE terminal,**
- 2144 c) EAC2 terminal Authentication Terminal according to [18]¹³⁶,
- 2145 d) **EAC1 terminal:**¹³⁷
- 2146 2) Objects:
- 2147 a) **all user data stored in the TOE; including sensitive EAC1-protected user**
- 2148 **data, and sensitive EAC2-protected user data.**
- 2149 b) all TOE intrinsic secret (cryptographic) data
- 2150 3) Security attributes:
- 2151 a) **Terminal Authorization Level (access rights)**
- 2152 b) none¹³⁸¹³⁹

2153 FDP_ACF.1.2/TRM

¹³⁵ [assignment: access control SFP]

¹³⁶ [assignment: list of EAC2 terminal types]

¹³⁷ [assignment: list of subjects and objects controlled under the indicated SFP, and, for each, the SFP-relevant security attributes, or name groups of SFP-relevant security attributes] (added using open assignment of [6])

¹³⁸ [assignment: list of subjects and objects controlled under the indicated SFP, and, for each, the SFP-relevant security attributes, or name groups of SFP-relevant security attributes] (added using open assignment of [6])

¹³⁹ [assignment: list of subjects and objects controlled under the indicated SFP, and, for each, the SFP-relevant security attributes, or name groups of SFP-relevant security attributes] (all bullets in FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM w.r.t. [2])

2154 The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled
2155 subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

2156 A PACE terminal is allowed to read data objects from FDP_ACF.1/TRM after successful
2157 PACE authentication according to [18] and/or [7], as required by ~~FIA_UAU.1/PACE~~
2158 FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP or FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP.¹⁴⁰

2159 FDP_ACF.1.3/TRM

2160 The TSF shall explicitly authorize access of subjects to objects based on the following
2161 additional rules: none.¹⁴¹

2162 FDP_ACF.1.4/TRM

2163 The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following
2164 additional rules:

- 2165 1. Any terminal ~~not being authenticated as a PACE terminal or an EAC2 terminal~~
2166 or an EAC1 terminal is not allowed to read, to write, to modify, or to use any user
2167 data stored on the **electronic document**.¹⁴²
- 2168 2. Terminals not using secure messaging are not allowed to read, write, modify, or
2169 use any data stored on the **electronic document**.
- 2170 3. No subject is allowed to read 'Electronic Document Communication Establishment
2171 Authorization Data' stored on the electronic document
- 2172 4. No subject is allowed to write or modify 'Secret Electronic Document Holder
2173 Authentication Data' stored on the electronic document, except for PACE terminals
2174 or EAC2 terminals executing PIN management based on the following rules:
 - 2175 1. CAN change
 - 2176 2. Change PIN
 - 2177 3. Resume PIN
 - 2178 4. Unblock PIN
 - 2179 5. Activate PIN
 - 2180 6. Deactivate PIN according to [18].¹⁴³

¹⁴⁰ [assignment: rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects]

¹⁴¹ [assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorize access of subjects to objects]

¹⁴² note that authentication of an EAC1 or EAC2 terminal to a TOE in certified mode implies a prior run of PACE.

¹⁴³ [assignment: list of rules for PIN management chosen from [18]]

- 2181 5. No subject is allowed to read, write, modify, or use the private Restricted
2182 Identification key(s) and Chip Authentication key(s) stored on the electronic
2183 document.
- 2184 6. Reading, modifying, writing, or using Sensitive User Data that are protected only
2185 by EAC2, is allowed only to EAC2 terminals using the following mechanism:
- 2186 The TOE applies the EAC2 protocol (cf. **FIA_UAU.5**
2187 **FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP**) to determine access rights of the terminal
2188 according to [18]. To determine the effective authorization of a terminal, the
2189 chip must calculate a bitwise Boolean 'and' of the relative authorization
2190 contained in the CHAT of the Terminal Certificate, the referenced DV
2191 Certificate, and the referenced CVCA Certificate, and additionally the confined
2192 authorization sent as part of PACE. Based on that effective authorization and
2193 the terminal type drawn from the CHAT of the Terminal Certificate, the TOE
2194 shall grant the right to read, modify or write Sensitive User Data, or perform
2195 operations using these Sensitive User Data.
- 2196 7. No subject is allowed to read, write, modify or use the data objects 2b) of
2197 FDP_ACF.1/TRM.
- 2198 8. No subject is allowed to read Sensitive User Data that are protected only by EAC1,
2199 except an EAC1 terminal (OID inspection system) after EAC1, cf.
2200 FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP, that has a corresponding relative authorization level.
2201 This includes in particular EAC1-protected user data DG3 and DG4 from an ICAO-
2202 compliant ePass application, cf. [17] and [8].
- 2203 9. If Sensitive User Data is protected both by EAC1 and EAC2, no subject is allowed
2204 to read those data except EAC1 terminals or EAC2 terminals that access these
2205 data according to rule 6 or rule 8 above.
- 2206 10. none.¹⁴⁴

2207 **65. Application note (from ST author)**

2208 The [6] uses the 'Electronic Document Communication Establishment Authorization Data'
2209 expression in 3.1.1.2 Secondary Assets and "Communication Establishment Authorization
2210 Data" in FDP_ACF.1.4/TRM 3. In order to provide consistency in our ST, we use only the
2211 Electronic Document Communication Establishment Authorization Data.

2212 **66. Application note (from ST author)**

2213 The above definition is based on FDP_ACF.1/TRM_EAC2PP. We argue that it covers
2214 FDP_ACF.1/TRM_EAC1PP as well. Subject 1b and 1d are renamed here from
2215 FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM_EAC1PP according to Table 1 Objects in 2), in particular the term EAC1-

¹⁴⁴ [assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects]

- 2216 protected user data, subsume all those explicitly enumerated in FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM_EAC1PP.
2217 Also, the security attribute 3a) Terminal Authorization Level here subsumes the explicitly
2218 enumerated attributes 3a) and 3b) of FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM_EAC1PP, but are semantically the
2219 same. Since in addition EAC2 protected data are stored in the TOE of this ST, additional
2220 subjects, objects and security attributes are listed here. However, since they apply to data with
2221 a different protection mechanism (EAC2), strict conformance is not violated.
- 2222 FDP_ACF.1.2/TRM uses the renaming of Table 1 , and references in addition [18]. However
2223 the references are compatible as justified in [6], yet both are mentioned here since [18] is the
2224 primary norm for an eID application, whereas [7] is normative for an ICAO compliant ePass
2225 application. Investigating the references reveals that access to data objects defined in
2226 FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM must be granted if these data are neither EAC1-protected, nor EAC2-
2227 protected.
- 2228 FDP_ACF.1.3/TRM is the same as in FDP_ACF.1.3/TRM_EAC2PP.
- 2229 References are changed in FDP_ACF.1.2/TRM_EAC1PP. It is already justified in [6] that
2230 definitions in [18] and [8] are compatible.
- 2231 FDP_ACF.1.3/TRM is taken over from [5] and [6] (same formulation in both).
- 2232 Rules 1 and 2 of FDP_ACF.1.4/TRM_EAC1PP in [5] are covered by their counterparts rule 1
2233 and rule 2 here. Rules 3 and 4, and rule 6 of FDP_ACF.1.4/TRM_EAC1PP in [5] are combined
2234 here to rule 8, where terminals need the corresponding CHAT to read data groups. Rule 5 of
2235 [5] is here equivalent to rule 7. None of this conflict with strict conformance to [5]. Note that
2236 adding additional rules compared to FDP_ACF.1.4/TRM_EAC1PP here can never violate strict
2237 conformance, as these are rules that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects. Hence
2238 security is always increased.
- 2239 The above definition also covers FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM_EAC2PP and extends it by additional
2240 subjects and objects. Sensitive User Data in the definition of FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM_EAC2PP are
2241 here EAC2-protected Sensitive User Data. EAC1-protected data are added here by
2242 refinement. Since the protection level and mechanisms w.r.t. to EAC2-protected data do not
2243 change, strict conformance is not violated.
- 2244 FDP_ACF.1.2/TRM_EAC2PP and FDP_ACF.1.3/TRM_EAC2PP are equivalent to the current
2245 definition.
- 2246 Rules 8, and 9 are added here by open assignment from [6]. None of these conflicts with strict
2247 conformance.
- 2248 The dependency of this SFR is met by FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP and
2249 FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP. Note that the SFR in [5] applies the assignment operation,
2250 whereas in [6] (by referencing [13]) the assignment is left open. Hence, they are compatible.
2251 We remark that in order to restrict the access to user data as defined in the SFR
2252 FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP, clearly access to objects 2b) of FDP_ACF.1.1/TRM must be
2253 restricted as well according to the SFP, otherwise access to user data is impossible to enforce.
- 2254 [67. Application note \(from ST author\)](#)
- 2255 The refinements were necessary to ensure unified terminology usage of SFRs.
- 2256 The following SFRs are imported due to claiming [6]. They concern access control mechanisms
2257 related to EAC2-protected data.

2284 FDP_RIP.1.1_EAC2PP

2285 The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made
2286 unavailable upon the deallocation of the resource from¹⁴⁸ the following objects:

- 2287 1. Session keys (PACE-K_{MAC}, PACE-K_{Enc}), (CA2-K_{MAC}, CA2-K_{Enc}) (immediately after
2288 closing related communication session),
- 2289 2. the ephemeral private key ephem-SK_{PICC}-PACE (by having generated a DH shared
2290 secret K),
- 2291 3. Secret Electronic Document Holder Authentication Data, e.g. PIN and/or PUK
2292 (when their temporarily stored values are not used any more)¹⁴⁹,
- 2293 4. none.¹⁵⁰

2294 **70. Application note (taken from [6], application note 30)**

2295 The functional family FDP_RIP possesses such a general character, that it is applicable not
2296 only to user data (as assumed by the class FDP), but also to TSF-Data; in this respect it is
2297 similar to the functional family FPT_EMS. Applied to cryptographic keys, FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP
2298 requires a certain quality metric (*any previous information content of a resource is made*
2299 *unavailable*) for key destruction in addition to FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP that merely requires to
2300 ensure key destruction according to a method/standard.

2301 **Application note 71 (from ST author)**

2302 The above SFR is slightly refined from [6] in order not to confuse Chip Authentication 1 with
2303 Chip Authentication 2.

2304 FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP

2305 Basic data exchange confidentiality – MRTD

2306 Hierarchical to: No other components

2307 Dependencies: [FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or FTP_TRP.1
2308 Trusted path] fulfilled by FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2309 [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1
2310 Subset information flow control] fulfilled by
2311 FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP

2312 FDP_UCT.1.1/TRM_EAC2PP

¹⁴⁸ [selection: *allocation of the resource to, deallocation of the resource from*]

¹⁴⁹ [assignment: *list of objects*]

¹⁵⁰ [assignment: *list of objects*]

2313 The TSF shall enforce the Access Control SFP¹⁵¹ to be able to transmit and receive¹⁵²
2314 user data in a manner protected from unauthorised disclosure.

2315 FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP
2316 TRM Data exchange integrity

2317 Dependencies: [FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or FTP_TRP.1
2318 Trusted path] fulfilled by FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2319 [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1
2320 Subset information flow control] fulfilled by
2321 FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP

2322 FDP_UIT.1.1/TRM_EAC2PP

2323 The TSF shall enforce the Access Control SFP¹⁵³ to be able to transmit and receive¹⁵⁴
2324 user data in a manner protected from modification, deletion, insertion and replay¹⁵⁵ errors.

2325 FDP_UIT.1.2/TRM_EAC2PP

2326 The TSF shall be able to determine on receipt of user data, whether modification, deletion,
2327 insertion and replay¹⁵⁶ has occurred.

2328 The following SFRs are imported due to claiming [5]. They concern access control mechanisms
2329 related to EAC1-protected data.

2330 • **FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP**

2331 The above is equivalent **FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP**, since EF.SOD (cf. FDP_ACC.1/TRM in
2332 [5]) can be considered user data.; cf. also the application note below FDP_ACF.1/TRM.

2333 • **FDP_ACF.1/TRM_EAC1PP**

2334 The above is covered by **FDP_ACF.1/TRM**; cf. Application Note there.

2335 • **FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP**

¹⁵¹ [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*]

¹⁵² [selection: *transmit, receive*]

¹⁵³ [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*]

¹⁵⁴ [selection: *transmit, receive*]

¹⁵⁵ [selection: *modification, deletion, insertion, replay*]

¹⁵⁶ [selection: *modification, deletion, insertion, replay*]

2336 • **FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1PP**

2337 (equivalent to **FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

2338 • **FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1PP**

2339 (equivalent to **FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

2340 FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP

2341 Subset residual information protection

2342 Hierarchical to: No other components

2343 Dependencies: No dependencies

2344 FDP_RIP.1.1/EAC1PP

2345 The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made
2346 unavailable upon the deallocation of the resource from¹⁵⁷ the following objects:

- 2347 1. Session Keys (immediately after closing related communication session),
- 2348 2. the ephemeral private key ephem-SK_{PICC}-PACE (by having generated a DH shared
2349 secret K¹⁵⁸),¹⁵⁹
- 2350 3. none.¹⁶⁰

2351 **6.1.4. Class FTP**

2352 The following SFRs are imported from [6].

2353 • **FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP**

2354 • **FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP**

2355 FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2356 Inter-TSF trusted channel after PACE

2357 Hierarchical to: No other components

2358 Dependencies: No dependencies

¹⁵⁷ [selection: *allocation of the resource to, deallocation of the resource from*]

¹⁵⁸ according to [7]

¹⁵⁹ [assignment: *list of objects*]

¹⁶⁰ [assignment: *list of objects*]

2359 FTP_ITC.1.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2360 The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and ~~another trusted IT~~
 2361 ~~product~~ a **PACE terminal** that is logically distinct from other communication channels and
 2362 provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from
 2363 modification or disclosure. **The trusted channel shall be established by performing the**
 2364 **PACE protocol according to [18].**

2365 FTP_ITC.1.2/PACE_EAC2PP

2366 The TSF shall permit ~~another trusted IT product~~ a PACE terminal¹⁶¹ to initiate
 2367 communication via the trusted channel.

2368 FTP_ITC.1.3/PACE_EAC2PP

2369 The TSF shall ~~initiate~~ **enforce** communication via the trusted channel for any data
 2370 exchange between the TOE and a PACE terminal after PACE.¹⁶²

2371 **72. Application note (taken from [6], application note 31)**

2372 The above definition refines FTP_ITC.1 from [13]. The definitions there are unclear as to what
 2373 the “other trusted IT product” actually is. Since we distinguish here between trusted channels
 2374 that are established once after PACE, and then then (re)established after CA2, the above
 2375 refinement is necessary for clarification.

2376 [FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP](#)
 2377 [Inter-TSF trusted channel after CA2](#)

2378 Hierarchical to: No other components

2379 Dependencies: No dependencies

2380 FTP_ITC.1.1/CA_EAC2PP

2381 The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and ~~another trusted IT~~
 2382 ~~product~~ an **EAC2 terminal** that is logically distinct from other communication channels
 2383 and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data
 2384 from modification or disclosure. **The trusted channel shall be established by**
 2385 **performing the CA2 protocol according to [18].**

¹⁶¹ [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*]

¹⁶² [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

2386 FTP_ITC.1.2/CA_EAC2PP

2387 The TSF shall permit ~~another trusted IT product~~ **an EAC2 terminal**¹⁶³ to initiate
2388 communication via the trusted channel.

2389 FTP_ITC.1.3/CA_EAC2PP

2390 The TSF shall ~~initiate~~ **enforce** communication via the trusted channel for any data
2391 exchange between the TOE and an EAC2 terminal after Chip Authentication 2.¹⁶⁴

2392 **73. Application note (taken from [6], application note 32)**

2393 The trusted channel is established after successful performing the PACE protocol
2394 (FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP), the TA2 protocol (FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP) and
2395 the CA2 protocol (FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP). If Chip Authentication 2 was successfully
2396 performed, secure messaging is immediately restarted using the derived session keys (CA-
2397 K_{MAC} , CA- K_{ENC})¹⁶⁵. This secure messaging enforces the required properties of operational
2398 trusted channel; the cryptographic primitives being used for the secure messaging are as
2399 required by FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP and FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP.

2400 The following SFR is imported due to claiming [5]. It concerns applications with EAC1-
2401 protected data.

2402 • **FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP**

2403 **FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP**
2404 **Inter-TSF trusted channel after PACE**

2405 Hierarchical to: No other components

2406 Dependencies: No dependencies

2407 FTP_ITC.1.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2408 The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT
2409 product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured
2410 identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or
2411 disclosure.

2412 FTP_ITC.1.2/PACE_EAC1PP

¹⁶³ [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*]

¹⁶⁴ [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

¹⁶⁵ otherwise secure messaging is continued using the established PACE session keys, cf. FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2413 The TSF shall permit another trusted IT product to initiate communication via the trusted
2414 channel.

2415 FTP_ITC.1.3/PACE_EAC1PP

2416 The TSF shall ~~initiate~~ **enforce** communication via the trusted channel for any data
2417 exchange between the TOE and the Terminal.¹⁶⁶

2418 **6.1.5. Class FAU**

2419 The following SFR is imported due to claiming [6]. It concerns applications with EAC2-
2420 protected data.

2421 • **FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP**

2422 FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP
2423 Audit storage

2424 Hierarchical to: No other components

2425 Dependencies: No dependencies

2426 FAU_SAS.1.1_EAC2PP

2427 The TSF shall provide the Manufacturer¹⁶⁷ with the capability to store the Initialisation and
2428 Pre-Personalisation Data¹⁶⁸ in the audit records.

2429 The following SFR is imported due to claiming [5]. It concerns applications with EAC1-
2430 protected data.

2431 • **FAU_SAS.1/EAC1PP**

2432 (equivalent to **FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

2433 **6.1.6. Class FMT**

2434 FMT_SMR.1
2435 Security roles

¹⁶⁶ [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

¹⁶⁷ [assignment: *authorised users*]

¹⁶⁸ [assignment: *list of management functions to be provided by the TSF*]

2436 Hierarchical to: No other components

2437 Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification: fulfilled by
2438 FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP,
2439 FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP,
2440 FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP

2441 FMT_SMR.1.1

2442 The TSF shall maintain the roles

- 2443 1. Manufacturer,
- 2444 2. Personalization Agent,
- 2445 3. Country Verifying Certification Authority (CVCA),
- 2446 4. Document Verifier (DV),
- 2447 5. Terminal,
- 2448 6. **PACE Terminal**,
- 2449 7. EAC2 terminal, Authentication terminal¹⁶⁹,
- 2450 8. **EAC1 terminal, if the ePassport application is active**,
- 2451 9. Electronic Document Holder.¹⁷⁰
- 2452 10. none¹⁷¹

2453 FMT_SMR.1.2

2454 The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

2455 **74. Application note (taken from [6], application note 35)**

2456 The role terminal is the default role for any terminal being recognized by the TOE as neither
2457 PACE terminal nor EAC2 terminal. The roles CVCA, DV, and EAC2 terminal are recognized
2458 by analyzing the current Terminal Certificate, cf.[18], (FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP).
2459 Specific types of EAC2 terminals are identified analogously. The TOE recognizes the
2460 electronic document holder by using a PACE terminal together with inputs PIN or PUK
2461 (FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP).Here FMT_SMR.1.1 covers FMT_SMR.1.1/PACE in [13] and
2462 assigns additional roles (Role 5.-6.). BISPACE is renamed here to PACE terminal (Role 2).
2463 This extension does not conflict with the strict conformance to [13].

¹⁶⁹ [assignment: *list of EAC2 terminal types*]

¹⁷⁰ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

¹⁷¹ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

2464 [75. Application note \(from ST author\)](#)

2465 For the role 7., the Authentication Terminal can also be a Privileged Terminal based on the
2466 [18] standard.

2467 The refinement in role 8. was necessary to align the two terminals (Domestic Extended
2468 Inspection System and Foreign Extended Inspection System) listed in [13] (role 7.-8.) with the
2469 terminology used in this ST. The refinement does not violate strict conformance with [13].

2470 The next SFRs are imported from [6]. They concern mainly applications with EAC2-protected
2471 data.

- 2472 • **FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP**
- 2473 • **FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP**
- 2474 • **FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP**
- 2475 • **FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP**

2476 This SFR is combined with FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP into to by **FMT_SMR.1**.

- 2477 • **FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP**
- 2478 • **FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP**
- 2479 • **FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP**
- 2480 • **FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP**
- 2481 • **FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP**
- 2482 • **FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP**
- 2483 • **FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP**
- 2484 • **FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP**
- 2485 • **FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP**
- 2486 • **FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP**
- 2487 • **FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP**

2488 [76. Application note \(from ST author\)](#)

2489 The above SFR concerns the whole TOE, not just applications with EAC2-protected data.

- 2490 • **FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP**

2491 [77. Application note \(from ST author\)](#)

2492 The above SFR concerns the whole TOE, not just applications with EAC2-protected data.

- 2493 • **FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP**

- 2494 • **FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP**

- 2495 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP
- 2496 Management of TSF data – Initialization of CVCA Certificate and Current Date

- 2497 Hierarchical to: No other components

- 2498 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions:
- 2499 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

- 2500 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles: fulfilled by FMT_SMR.1/
- 2501 EAC2PP

- 2502 FMT_MTD.1.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP

- 2503 The TSF shall restrict the ability to write¹⁷² the

- 2504 1. initial CVCA Public Key,
- 2505 2. meta-data of the initial CVCA Certificate as required in [18], resp. [19],
- 2506 3. initial Current Date,
- 2507 4. none¹⁷³

- 2508 to the Personalization Agent.¹⁷⁴¹⁷⁵.

- 2509 **78. Application note (taken from [6], application note 36)**

- 2510 The initial CVCA Public Key may be written by the manufacturer in the manufacturing phase
- 2511 or by the Personalization Agent in the issuing phase (cf. [18]). The initial CVCA Public Keys
- 2512 and their updates later on are used to verify the CVCA Link-Certificates.

- 2513 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP
- 2514 Management of TSF data – Country Verifying Certification Authority

- 2515 Hierarchical to: No other components

- 2516 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions:
- 2517 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

- 2518 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles: fulfilled by
- 2519 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP

¹⁷² [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁷³ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁷⁴ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

¹⁷⁵ [selection: *the manufacturer, the personalization agent*]

2520 FMT_MTD.1.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP

2521 The TSF shall restrict the ability to update¹⁷⁶ the

2522 1. CVCA Public Key (PK_{CVCA}),

2523 2. meta-data of the CVCA Certificate as required by [18], resp. [19],¹⁷⁷

2524 3. none¹⁷⁸

2525 to the Country Verifying Certification Authority.¹⁷⁹

2526 **79. Application note (taken from [6], application note 37)**

2527 The CVCA updates its asymmetric key pair and distributes the public key and related meta-
2528 data by means of CVCA Link-Certificates. The TOE updates its internal trust-point, if a valid
2529 CVCA Link-Certificate (cf. FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP) is provided by the terminal (cf. [19]).

2530 FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

2531 Specification of Management Functions

2532 Hierarchical to: No other components

2533 Dependencies: No dependencies

2534 FMT_SMF.1.1/EAC2PP

2535 The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions:

2536 1. Initialization,

2537 2. Pre-Personalization,

2538 3. Personalization,

2539 4. Configuration,

2540 5. **Resume and unblock the PIN (if any)**,

2541 6. **Activate and deactivate the PIN (if any)**.¹⁸⁰

2542 **80. Application note (taken from [6], application note 33)**

2543 The capability of PIN management gives additional security to the TOE.

2544 **81. Application note (taken from [6], application note 34)**

¹⁷⁶ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁷⁷ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁷⁸ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁷⁹ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

¹⁸⁰ [assignment: *list of management functions to be provided by the TSF*]

2545 The SFR is here refined by including mechanisms for PIN management. A TOE without PIN
2546 management functionality can only use a commonly shared secret (such as the MRZ – in the
2547 case of an ID document – or the CAN) during execution of PACE to control access to sensitive
2548 information. A PIN however must not be shared and thus can be kept secret by the user.
2549 Hence, this refinement of FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP increases protection of user data by allowing
2550 PIN access, and thus does not violate strict conformity to [13].

2551 FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP
2552 Management of TSF data – Current date

2553 Hierarchical to: No other components

2554 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2555 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

2556 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2557 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2558 FMT_MTD.1.1/DATE_EAC2PP

2559 The TSF shall restrict the ability to modify¹⁸¹ the current date¹⁸² to

- 2560 1. CVCA,
- 2561 2. Document Verifier,
- 2562 3. EAC2 terminal (Authentication Terminal¹⁸³) possessing an Accurate Terminal
2563 Certificate according to [19].¹⁸⁴
- 2564 4. none¹⁸⁵

2565 **82. Application note (taken from [6], application note 38)**

2566 The authorized roles are identified in their certificates (cf. [18]) and are authorized by validating
2567 the certificate chain up to the CVCA (cf. FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP). The authorized role of a
2568 terminal is part of the Certificate Holder Authorization in the card verifiable certificate that is
2569 provided by the terminal within Terminal Authentication 2 (cf. [19]). Different types of EAC2
2570 terminals may exist, cf. [18].

2571 FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP
2572 Management of TSF data – Personalization Agent

2573 Hierarchical to: No other components

¹⁸¹ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁸² [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁸³ [assignment: *list of EAC2 terminal types*]

¹⁸⁴ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

¹⁸⁵ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

- 2574 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2575 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP
- 2576 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2577 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP
- 2578 FMT_MTD.1.1/PA_EAC2PP
- 2579 The TSF shall restrict the ability to write¹⁸⁶ the **card/chip security object(s) (SO_C)** and
2580 the document Security Object (SO_D)¹⁸⁷ to the Personalization Agent¹⁸⁸.
- 2581 **83. Application note (taken from [6], application note 39)**
- 2582 Note that the card/chip security objects are mentioned here as well. These contain information,
2583 such as algorithm identifiers, only necessary for EAC2. All requirements formulated in [13] are
2584 thus met, and strict conformance is therefore not violated
- 2585 FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP
2586 Management of TSF data – Chip Authentication and Restricted Identification Private Key(s)
- 2587 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 2588 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2589 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP
- 2590 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2591 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP
- 2592 FMT_MTD.1.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP
- 2593 The TSF shall restrict the ability to create or load¹⁸⁹¹⁹⁰ the Chip Authentication private
2594 key(s) (SK_{PICC}) and the Restricted Identification Private Key(s)¹⁹¹ to the Personalization
2595 Agent.¹⁹²
- 2596 **84. Application note (taken from [6], application note 40)**
- 2597 Applied, see FCS_CKM.1/CA2 and FCS_CKM.1/RI.

¹⁸⁶ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁸⁷ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁸⁸ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

¹⁸⁹ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁹⁰ [selection: *create, load*]

¹⁹¹ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁹² [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

2598	FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	
2599	Management of TSF data – Private Key Read	
2600	Hierarchical to:	No other components
2601	Dependencies:	FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2602		fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP
2603		FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2604		FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP
2605	FMT_MTD.1.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	
2606	The TSF shall restrict the ability to <u>read</u> ¹⁹³ the	
2607	1.	<u>PACE passwords.</u>
2608	2.	<u>Personalization Agent Keys.</u>
2609	3.	<u>the Chip Authentication private key(s) (SK_{PICC})</u>
2610	4.	<u>the Restricted Identification private key(s)</u> ¹⁹⁴
2611	5.	<u>none</u> ¹⁹⁵
2612	to <u>none</u> ¹⁹⁶	
2613	85. Application note (taken from [6], application note 41)	
2614	FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP extends the SFR from [13] by additional assignments.	
2615	FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	
2616	PIN Management of TSF data – Initialize PIN	
2617	Hierarchical to:	No other components
2618	Dependencies:	FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2619		fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP
2620		FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2621		FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP
2622	FMT_MTD.1.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	

¹⁹³ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁹⁴ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁹⁵ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁹⁶ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

2623 The TSF shall restrict the ability to write¹⁹⁷ the initial PIN and PUK¹⁹⁸ to the Personalization
2624 Agent¹⁹⁹

2625 FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP
2626 Management of TSF data – Changing PIN

2627 Hierarchical to: No other components

2628 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2629 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

2630 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2631 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2632 FMT_MTD.1.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP

2633 The TSF shall restrict the ability to change²⁰⁰ the blocked PIN²⁰¹ to

- 2634 1. Electronic Document Holder (using the PUK) with unauthenticated terminal
2635 2. Authentication Terminal with the Terminal Authorisation level for PIN management
2636 according to [18]²⁰²²⁰³

2637 FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP
2638 Management of TSF data – Resuming PIN

2639 Hierarchical to: No other components

2640 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2641 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

2642 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2643 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2644 FMT_MTD.1.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP

¹⁹⁷ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁹⁸ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁹⁹ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

²⁰⁰ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²⁰¹ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²⁰² [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

²⁰³ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles that match the list of PIN changing rules conformant to [18]*]

2645 The TSF shall restrict the ability to resume²⁰⁴ the suspended PIN²⁰⁵ to the Electronic
2646 Document Holder²⁰⁶

2647 **86. Application note (taken from [6], application note 42)**

2648 Resuming is a two-step procedure, subsequently using PACE with the CAN and PACE with
2649 the PIN. It must be implemented according to [18], and is relevant for the status as required by
2650 FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP. The Electronic Document Holder is authenticated as
2651 required by FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP using the PIN as the shared password.

2652 FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP
2653 Management of TSF data – Unblocking PIN

2654 Hierarchical to: No other components

2655 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2656 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

2657 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2658 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2659 FMT_MTD.1.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP

2660 The TSF shall restrict the ability to unblock²⁰⁷ the blocked PIN²⁰⁸ to

- 2661 1. the Electronic Document Holder (using the PUK for unblocking),
- 2662 2. an EAC2 terminal of a type that has the terminal authorization level for PIN
2663 management.²⁰⁹

2664 **87. Application note (taken from [6], application note 43)**

2665 The unblocking procedure must be implemented according to [18], and is relevant for the status
2666 as required by FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP. It can be triggered by either (i) the Electronic
2667 Document Holder being authenticated as required by FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP using the
2668 PUK as the shared password or (ii) an EAC2 terminal (FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP)
2669 that proved a terminal authorization level being sufficient for PIN management
2670 (FDP_ACF.1/TRM).

2671 FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP
2672 Management of TSF data – Activating/Deactivating PIN

²⁰⁴ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²⁰⁵ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²⁰⁶ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

²⁰⁷ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²⁰⁸ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²⁰⁹ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

- 2673 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 2674 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2675 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP
- 2676 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2677 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP
- 2678 FMT_MTD.1.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP

2679 The TSF shall restrict the ability to activate and deactivate²¹⁰ the PIN²¹¹ to an EAC2
2680 terminal of a type that has the terminal authorization level for PIN management²¹².

2681 **88. Application note (taken from [6], application note 44)**

2682 The activation/deactivation procedures must be implemented according to [18]. They can be
2683 triggered by an EAC2 terminal (FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP) that proved a terminal
2684 authorization level sufficient for PIN management (FDP_ACF.1/TRM).

2685 FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP
2686 Secure TSF data

- 2687 Hierarchical to: No other components
- 2688 Dependencies: FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data fulfilled by
2689 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP,
2690 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP,
2691 FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP

2692 FMT_MTD.3.1_EAC2PP

2693 The TSF shall ensure that only secure values **of the certificate chain** are accepted for
2694 TSF data of the Terminal Authentication protocol 2 and the Access Control SFP²¹³.
2695 **Refinement: To determine if the certificate chain is valid, the TOE shall proceed the**
2696 **certificate validation according to [19].**

2697 **89. Application note (taken from [6], application note 45)**

2698 Terminal Authentication is used as required by (i) FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP and
2699 FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP. The terminal authorization level derived from the CVCA

²¹⁰ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²¹¹ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²¹² [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

²¹³ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

2700 Certificate, the DV Certificate and the Terminal Certificate is used as TSF-data for the access
2701 control required by FDP_ACF.1/TRM.

2702 In addition, this ST contains all remaining SFRs of the claimed [13].

2703 FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP
2704 Limited capabilities

2705 Hierarchical to: No other components

2706 Dependencies: FMT_LIM.2 Limited availability: fulfilled by
2707 FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP

2708 FMT_LIM.1.1_EAC2PP

2709 The TSF shall be designed in a manner that limits their capabilities so that in conjunction
2710 with 'Limited availability (FMT_LIM.2)' the following policy is enforced:

2711 Deploying test features after TOE delivery do not allow

- 2712 1. User Data to be manipulated and disclosed.
- 2713 2. TSF data to be manipulated or disclosed.
- 2714 3. software to be reconstructed.
- 2715 4. substantial information about construction of TSF to be gathered which may enable
2716 other attacks.²¹⁴ and
- 2717 5. EAC1 and EAC2 protected data²¹⁵

2718 **Application note 90 (from ST author)**

2719 The assignment was necessary to cover all protected user data.

2720 FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP
2721 Limited availability

2722 Hierarchical to: No other components

2723 Dependencies: FMT_LIM.1 Limited capabilities: fulfilled by
2724 FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP

2725 FMT_LIM.2.1_EAC2PP

²¹⁴ [assignment: *Limited capability and availability policy*]

²¹⁵ [assignment: *Limited capability and availability policy*]

2726 The TSF shall be designed in a manner that limits their availability so that in conjunction
2727 with 'Limited capabilities (FMT_LIM.1)' the following policy is enforced:

2728 Deploying test features after TOE delivery do not allow

- 2729 1. User Data to be manipulated and disclosed,
- 2730 2. TSF data to be manipulated or disclosed,
- 2731 3. software to be reconstructed,
- 2732 4. substantial information about construction of TSF to be gathered which may enable
2733 other attacks.²¹⁶ and
- 2734 5. EAC1 and EAC2 protected data²¹⁷

2735 **Application note 91 (from ST author)**

2736 The assignment was necessary to cover all protected user data.

2737 FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP

2738 Management of TSF data – Writing Initialisation and Pre-personalisation Data

2739 Hierarchical to: No other components

2740 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions:
2741 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP

2742 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles: fulfilled by
2743 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP

2744 FMT_MTD.1.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP

2745 The TSF shall restrict the ability to write²¹⁸ the Initialisation Data and Pre-personalisation
2746 Data²¹⁹ to the Manufacturer.²²⁰

2747 FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP

2748 Management of TSF data – Reading and Using Initialisation and Pre-personalisation Data

2749 Hierarchical to: No other components

²¹⁶ [assignment: *Limited capability and availability policy*]

²¹⁷ [assignment: *Limited capability and availability policy*]

²¹⁸ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²¹⁹ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²²⁰ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

- 2750 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions:
2751 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP
- 2752 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles: fulfilled by
2753 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP
- 2754 FMT_MTD.1.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP
- 2755 The TSF shall restrict the ability to read out²²¹ the Initialisation Data and the Pre-
2756 personalisation Data²²² to the Personalisation Agent.²²³
- 2757 The following SFRs are imported due to claiming [5]. They mainly concern applications with
2758 EAC1-protected data.
- 2759 • **FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP**
 - 2760 • **FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP**
- 2761 This SFR is combined with FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC2PP into **FMT_SMR.1**.
- 2762 • **FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP**
- 2763 This SFR is equivalent to **FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness.
- 2764 • **FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP**
- 2765 This SFR is equivalent to **FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness.
- 2766 • **FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC1PP**
- 2767 (equivalent to **FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)
- 2768 • **FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC1PP**
- 2769 (equivalent to **FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)
- 2770 • **FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP**
 - 2771 • **FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP**
 - 2772 • **FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP**

²²¹ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²²² [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²²³ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

2773 This SFR is equivalent to **FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP**. Note that
 2774 FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP generalizes the notion of Domestic Extended Inspection System
 2775 to EAC1 terminals with appropriate authorization level. This does not violate strict conformance
 2776 to [5].

- 2777 • **FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP**
- 2778 • **FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP**
- 2779 • **FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP**
- 2780 • **FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP**

2781 FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP
 2782 Specification of Management Functions

2783 Hierarchical to: No other components

2784 Dependencies: No dependencies

2785 FMT_SMF.1.1/EAC1PP

2786 The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions:

- 2787 1. Initialization,
- 2788 2. Pre-personalisation,
- 2789 3. Personalisation
- 2790 4. Configuration.²²⁴

2791 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP
 2792 Management of TSF data – Initialization of CVCA Certificate and Current Date

2793 Hierarchical to: No other components

2794 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
 2795 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP

2796 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
 2797 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2798 FMT_MTD.1.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP

²²⁴ [assignment: *list of management functions to be provided by the TSF*]

2799 The TSF shall restrict the ability to write²²⁵ the

- 2800 1. initial Country Verifying Certification Authority Public Key,
- 2801 2. initial Country Verifying Certification Authority Certificate,
- 2802 3. initial Current Date,
- 2803 4. none²²⁶²²⁷

2804 to Personalisation Agent²²⁸.

2805 **92. Application note (taken from [5], application note 41)**

2806 Applied.

2807 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP

2808 Management of TSF data – Country Verifying Certification Authority

2809 Hierarchical to: No other components

2810 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2811 functions fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP

2812 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2813 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2814 FMT_MTD.1.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP

2815 The TSF shall restrict the ability to update²²⁹ the

- 2816 1. Country Verifying Certification Authority Public Key,
- 2817 2. Country Verifying Certification Authority Certificate²³⁰

2818 to Country Verifying Certification Authority.²³¹

2819 **93. Application note (taken from [5], application note 42)**

2820 The Country Verifying Certification Authority updates its asymmetric key pair and distributes
2821 the public key by means of the Country Verifying CA Link-Certificates (cf. [17]). The TOE

²²⁵ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²²⁶ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²²⁷ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²²⁸ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

²²⁹ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²³⁰ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²³¹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

2822 updates its internal trust-point if a valid Country Verifying CA Link-Certificates (cf.
2823 FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP) is provided by the terminal (cf. [17])

2824 FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP
2825 Management of TSF data – Chip Authentication Private Key

2826 Hierarchical to: No other components

2827 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2828 functions fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP

2829 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2830 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2831 FMT_MTD.1.1/CAPK_EAC1PP

2832 The TSF shall restrict the ability to create, load²³²²³³ the Chip Authentication Private Key²³⁴
2833 to Manufacturer or Personalisation Agent.²³⁵

2834 **94. Application note (taken from [5], application note 44)**

2835 Applied.

2836 FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP
2837 Management of TSF data – Personalisation Agent

2838 Hierarchical to: No other components

2839 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions:
2840 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP

2841 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles: fulfilled by
2842 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2843 FMT_MTD.1.1/PA_EAC1PP

2844 The TSF shall restrict the ability to write²³⁶ the Document Security Object (SO_D)²³⁷ to the
2845 Personalisation Agent.²³⁸

²³² [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²³³ [selection: *create, load*]

²³⁴ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²³⁵ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

²³⁶ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²³⁷ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²³⁸ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

2846 FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP
2847 Management of TSF data – Key Read

2848 Hierarchical to: No other components

2849 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions:
2850 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP

2851 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2852 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP
2853 FMT_MTD.1.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP

2854 The TSF shall restrict the ability to read²³⁹ the

- 2855 1. PACE passwords,
- 2856 2. Chip Authentication Private Key,
- 2857 3. Personalisation Agent Keys²⁴⁰
- 2858 4. **Active Authentication Private Key**

2859 to none²⁴¹

2860 **95. Application note (taken from [5], application note 45)**

2861 The SFR FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP in the ST covers the definition in [13] and
2862 extends it by additional TSF data. This extension does not conflict with the strict conformance
2863 to [13].

2864 **96. Application note (ST author)**

2865 The refinement was necessary because of the Active Authentication protocol.

2866 FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP
2867 Secure TSF data

2868 Hierarchical to: No other components

2869 Dependencies: FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data fulfilled by
2870 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP and
2871 FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP

2872 FMT_MTD.3.1_EAC1PP

²³⁹ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²⁴⁰ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²⁴¹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

2873 The TSF shall ensure that only secure values **of the certificate chain** are accepted for
2874 TSF data of the Terminal Authentication Protocol v.1 and the Access Control.²⁴²

2875 **Refinement: The certificate chain is valid if and only if**

- 2876 1. **the digital signature of the Inspection System Certificate can be verified as**
2877 **correct with the public key of the Document Verifier Certificate and the**
2878 **expiration date of the Inspection System Certificate is not before the Current**
2879 **Date of the TOE,**
- 2880 2. **the digital signature of the Document Verifier Certificate can be verified as**
2881 **correct with the public key in the Certificate of the Country Verifying**
2882 **Certification Authority and the expiration date of the Certificate of the Country**
2883 **Verifying Certification Authority is not before the Current Date of the TOE and**
2884 **the expiration date of the Document Verifier Certificate is not before the Current**
2885 **Date of the TOE,**
- 2886 3. **the digital signature of the Certificate of the Country Verifying Certification**
2887 **Authority can be verified as correct with the public key of the Country Verifying**
2888 **Certification Authority known to the TOE.**

2889 **The Inspection System Public Key contained in the Inspection System Certificate in**
2890 **a valid certificate chain is a secure value for the authentication reference data of the**
2891 **~~Extended Inspection System~~ EAC1 terminal.**

2892 **The intersection of the Certificate Holder Authorizations contained in the**
2893 **certificates of a valid certificate chain is a secure value for Terminal Authorization**
2894 **of a successful authenticated ~~Extended Inspection System~~ EAC1 terminal.**

2895 **97. Application note (taken from [5], application note 46)**

2896 The Terminal Authentication Version 1 is used for EAC1 terminal as required by
2897 FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP and FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP. The Terminal Authorization is
2898 used as TSF data for access control required by FDP_ACF.1/TRM.

2899 The following SFR is new and concern security management for ePassport application in
2900 combination with [5] in case the Active Authentication protocol is active:

2901 [FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key](#)

2902 Management of TSF data – Active Authentication Private Key

2903 Hierarchical to: No other components

²⁴² [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

2904 Dependencies: FMT_SMF.1 Specification of management functions
2905 fulfilled by FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP

2906 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles fulfilled by
2907 FMT_SMR.1/PACE_EAC1PP

2908 FMT_MTD.1.1/AA_Private_Key

2909 The TSF shall restrict the ability to create or load²⁴³ the Active Authentication Private
2910 Key²⁴⁴ to the Personalization Agent.²⁴⁵

2911 **6.1.7. Class FPT**

2912 The following security functional requirements are imported from [6], and address the
2913 protection against forced illicit information leakage, including physical manipulation.

- 2914 • **FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP**
- 2915 • **FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP**
- 2916 • **FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP**
- 2917 • **FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP**

2918 The following SFRs are imported due to claiming [5]. They mostly concern the protection of
2919 security functionality related to EAC1-protected data.

- 2920 • **FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP**

2921 (equivalent to **FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

- 2922 • **FPT_FLS.1/EAC1PP**

2923 (equivalent to **FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

- 2924 • **FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP**

2925 (equivalent to **FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP**, but listed here for the sake of completeness)

- 2926 • **FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP**

²⁴³ [assignment: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

²⁴⁴ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

²⁴⁵ [assignment: *the authorized identified roles*]

2927 FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP
2928 TOE Emanation

2929 Hierarchical to: No other components

2930 Dependencies: No dependencies

2931 FPT_EMS.1.1/EAC2PP

2932 The TOE shall not emit variations in power consumption or timing during command
2933 execution²⁴⁶ in excess of non-useful information²⁴⁷ enabling access to

- 2934 1. the session keys (PACE-K_{MAC}, PACE-K_{Enc}), (CA-K_{MAC}, CA-K_{Enc}),
- 2935 2. the ephemeral private key ephem-SK_{PICC}-PACE, ²⁴⁸
- 2936 3. the Chip Authentication private keys (SK_{PICC})
- 2937 4. the PIN, PUK,
- 2938 5. none²⁴⁹

2939 and

- 2940 6. the Restricted Identification private key(s) SK_{ID}, ²⁵⁰
- 2941 7. none.²⁵¹

2942 FPT_EMS.1.2/EAC2PP

2943 The TSF shall ensure any users²⁵² are unable to use the following interface electronic
2944 document's contactless/contact-based interface and circuit contacts²⁵³ to gain access to

- 2945 1. the session keys (PACE-K_{MAC}, PACE-K_{Enc}), (CA2-K_{MAC}, CA2-K_{Enc}),
- 2946 2. the ephemeral private key ephem -SK_{PICC}-PACE1,
- 2947 3. the Chip Authentication private key(s) (SK_{PICC}),
- 2948 4. the PIN, PUK,
- 2949 5. the session keys (PACE-K_{MAC}, PACE-K_{Enc}), (CA-K_{MAC}, CA-K_{Enc})²⁵⁴

²⁴⁶ [assignment: types of emissions]

²⁴⁷ [assignment: specified limits]

²⁴⁸ [assignment: list of types of TSF data]

²⁴⁹ [assignment: list of types of TSF data]

²⁵⁰ [assignment: list of types of user data]

²⁵¹ [assignment: list of types of user data]

²⁵² [assignment: type of users]

²⁵³ [assignment: type of connection]

²⁵⁴ [assignment: list of types of TSF data]

2950 6. none²⁵⁵

2951 and

2952 7. the Restricted Identification private key(s) SK_{ID},²⁵⁶

2953 8. none.²⁵⁷

2954 **98. Application note (taken from [6], application note 46)**

2955 The TOE shall prevent attacks against the listed secret data where the attack is based on
2956 external observable physical phenomena of the TOE. Such attacks may be observable at the
2957 interfaces of the TOE, originate from internal operation of the TOE, or be caused by an attacker
2958 that varies the physical environment under which the TOE operates. The set of measurable
2959 physical phenomena is influenced by the technology employed to implement the smart card.
2960 Examples of measurable phenomena include, but are not limited to variations in power
2961 consumption, timing of signals, and electromagnetic radiation due to internal operations or
2962 data transmissions.

2963 Note that while the security functionality described in FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP should be taken
2964 into account during development of the TOE, associated tests must be carried out as part of
2965 the evaluation, and not/not only during product development.

2966 Note that in the above SFR, all items in FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP from 3. upwards are additional
2967 assignments. The first item is slightly refined to include CA-key(s).

2968 The above SFR is refined from [6] by adding all relevant key material from Chip Authentication
2969 2, the additional assignment to cover the private sector keys. Thus, the set of keys that need
2970 to be protected is a superset of the ones of the SFR from [6]. Hence, the requirement is stricter
2971 than the one from [6], and the refinement operation is justified.

2972 The FPT_EMS.1.2/EAC2PP is refined because in the [6] first and fifth point is identical and
2973 unnecessary to repeat the first point in the current ST.

2974 **FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP**
2975 **Failure with preservation of secure state**

2976 Hierarchical to: No other components

2977 Dependencies: No dependencies

2978 **FPT_FLS.1.1_EAC2PP**

2979 The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur:

2980 1. Exposure to operating conditions causing a TOE malfunction,

²⁵⁵ [assignment: list of types of TSF data]

²⁵⁶ [assignment: list of types of user data]

²⁵⁷ [assignment: list of types of user data]

3004 The TOE will implement appropriate measures to continuously counter physical
 3005 manipulation and physical probing. Due to the nature of these attacks (especially
 3006 manipulation) the TOE can by no means detect attacks on all of its elements. Therefore,
 3007 permanent protection against these attacks is required ensuring that the TSP could not be
 3008 violated at any time. Hence, “automatic response” means here (i) assuming that there
 3009 might be an attack at any time and (ii) countermeasures are provided at any time.

3010 FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP
 3011 TOE Emanation

3012 Hierarchical to: No other components

3013 Dependencies: No dependencies

3014 FPT_EMS.1.1/EAC1PP

3015 The TOE shall not emit variations in power consumption or timing during command
 3016 execution²⁶⁶ in excess of non-useful information²⁶⁷ enabling access to

- 3017 1. Chip Authentication (Version 1) Session Keys,
- 3018 2. PACE session Keys (PACE-K_{MAC}, PACE-K_{Enc}),
- 3019 3. the ephemeral private key ephem SK_{PICC-PACE},
- 3020 4. the ephemeral private key SK_{MapPICC-PACE-CAM}²⁶⁸
- 3021 5. Active Authentication Private Key²⁶⁹
- 3022 6. Personalisation Agent Key(s)
- 3023 7. Chip Authentication (Version 1) Private Key²⁷⁰ and
- 3024 8. none²⁷¹

3025 FPT_EMS.1.2/EAC1PP

3026 The TSF shall ensure any users²⁷² are unable to use the following interface smart card
 3027 circuit contacts²⁷³ to gain access to

- 3028 1. Chip Authentication (Version 1) Session Keys,
- 3029 2. PACE session Keys (PACE-K_{MAC}, PACE-K_{Enc}),

²⁶⁶ [assignment: *types of emissions*]

²⁶⁷ [assignment: *specified limits*]

²⁶⁸ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

²⁶⁹ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

²⁷⁰ [assignment: *list of types of user data*]

²⁷¹ [assignment: *list of types of user data*]

²⁷² [assignment: *type of users*]

²⁷³ [assignment: *type of connection*]

- 3030 3. the ephemeral private key $SK_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE}$,
- 3031 4. the ephemeral private key $SK_{\text{MapP}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE-CAM}$ ²⁷⁴
- 3032 5. Active Authentication Private Key²⁷⁵
- 3033 6. Personalisation Agent Key(s)
- 3034 7. Chip Authentication (**Version 1**) Private Key²⁷⁶ and
- 3035 8. none.²⁷⁷

3036 **100. Application note (from ST author)**

3037 This SFR covers the definition of FPT_EMS.1 in [5] and extends it by 4. and 5. of
3038 FPT_EMS.1.1/EAC1PP and FPT_EMS.1.2/EAC1PP. Also, 1. and 7. of both
3039 FPT_EMS.1.1/EAC1PP and FPT_EMS.1.2/EAC1PP are slightly refined in order not to confuse
3040 Chip Authentication 1 with Chip Authentication 2.

3041 Note that FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP in [5] is solely concerned with Chip Authentication 1, but since
3042 it was the first version of the protocol at the time, it was simply called 'Chip Authentication' back
3043 then.

3044 W.r.t. PACE-CAM, note the significance of protecting $SK_{\text{Map,P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE-CAM}$: Whereas when
3045 running PACE and CA1 separately, gaining knowledge of the ephemeral key $SK_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE}$
3046 enables the attacker to decrypt the current PACE session, an attacker that gains knowledge
3047 of the ephemeral key $SK_{\text{Map,P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE-CAM}$ can not only decrypt the session but also easily
3048 reveal the static secret chip authentication key $SK_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}$: Let \circ denote the group operation (i.e.
3049 addition or multiplication), and let $i(x)$ denote the inverse of x . Since the chip sends $CA_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}} =$
3050 $SK_{\text{Map,P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE-CAM} \circ i(SK_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}})$ to the terminal, a malicious attacker that gains knowledge of
3051 $SK_{\text{Map,P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE-CAM}$ can reveal $SK_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}$ by computing $SK_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}} = i(CA_{\text{P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}) \circ SK_{\text{Map,P}1\text{C}2\text{C}}\text{-PACE-}$
3052 CAM.

3053 As a result of the TOE supporting the Active Authentication, the SFR is extended to include
3054 Active Authentication Private Key.

3055 **101. Application note (taken from[5], application note 48)**

3056 Applied.

3057 **6.2.Security Assurance Requirements for the TOE**

3058 The assurance requirements for the evaluation of the TOE, its development and operating
3059 environment are to choose as the predefined assurance package EAL5 augmented by the
3060 following components:

- 3061 • ALC_DVS.2 (Sufficiency of security measures) and

²⁷⁴ [assignment: list of types of TSF data]

²⁷⁵ [assignment: list of types of TSF data]

²⁷⁶ [assignment: list of types of TSF data]

²⁷⁷ [assignment: list of types of user data]

3062

- AVA_VAN.5 (Advanced methodical vulnerability analysis).

3063 **6.3.Security Requirements Rationale**

3064 **6.3.1. Security Functional Requirements Rationale**

3065 The following table provides an overview for the coverage of the security functional requirements, and also gives evidence for sufficiency and
3066 necessity of the chosen SFRs.

	OT.CA2	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof[5]	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA	OT.Sens_Data_Conf [5]	OT.AC_Pers_EAC2	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2	OT.Data_Integrity	OT.Data_Authenticity	OT.Data_Confidentiality	OT.Identification	OT.AC_Pers	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak	OT.RI_EAC2
Class FCS														
FCS_CKM.1/CAM	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	X	X	X	-	-	-	-
FCS_COP.1/CAM	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	X	X	X	-	-	-	-
FCS_CKM.1/CA2	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
FCS_CKM.1/RI	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/AA	-	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
FCS_COP.1/AA	-	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Class FIA														
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-	X	-	X	-	-	X	X	X	-	X	-	-
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	X	-	-	X	X	X	-	X	-	-
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-	X	-	X	-	-	X	X	X	-	X	-	-
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	X	X	X	-	-	-	-
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	-	-	X	X	X	-	-	-	-

	OT.CA2	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof[5]	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM	OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA	OT.Sens_Data_Conf [5]	OT.AC_Pers_EAC2	OT.Sens_Data_EAC2	OT.Data_Integrity	OT.Data_Authenticity	OT.Data_Confidentiality	OT.Identification	OT.AC_Pers	OT.Prot_Inf_Leak	OT.RI_EAC2
FIA_API.1/AA	-	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Class FDP														
FDP_ACF.1/TRM	-	-	-	-	X	X	X	X	-	X	-	X	-	-
Class FMT														
FMT_SMR.1	-	X	-	-	-	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP	-	X	-	X	X	-	-	X	X	X	-	X	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-
Class FPT														
FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	X	-
FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-	-	-	-	-	X	-

Table 11 Coverage of Security Objectives for the TOE by SFRs

3067

3068 According to [1], tracing between SFRs and security objectives must ensure that 1) each SFR
3069 traces back to at least one security objective, and 2) that each security objective for the TOE
3070 has at least one SFR tracing to it. This is illustrated for

- 3071 1. SFRs that have been newly added or refined within this ST by checking the rows of
3072 Table 11 , and for SFRs that are merely iterated or simply included due to claims of
3073 other protection profiles by looking up the rationale of that PP
- 3074 2. for newly introduced security objectives in this ST by checking the non-cursive columns
3075 of Table 11 , and for the other security objectives by looking up the rationale of that PP.

3076 In other words, in Table 11 , we list only:

- 3077 • SFRs that have been newly added or refined within this ST. Mere iterations or simple
3078 inclusions due to claims of other protection profiles are not listed, however. For their
3079 coverage we refer to the respective claimed PP.
- 3080 • Security objectives that are newly introduced in this ST, and their related SFRs.
- 3081 • Security objectives for the TOE that are affected by the above newly added or refined
3082 SFRs.

3083 In case an SFR was refined in order to ensure the unified terminology usage, those SFRs are
3084 not listed in Table 11 or justifies below, because these refinements have no security impacts.

3085 Analogously, we limit our justification to the above SFRs and security objectives. For other
3086 security objectives, and for the justification of security objectives w.r.t. SFRs that are included
3087 or iterated from claimed protection profiles, we refer to the detailed rationales in [5] and [6].

3088 **OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_PACE_CAM** is a newly introduced security objective that aims to
3089 ensure the authenticity of the electronic document's chip by the PACE-CAM protocol, in
3090 particular in the context of an ePassport application. This is supported by **FCS_CKM.1/CAM**
3091 for cryptographic key-generation, and **FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM** and **FCS_COP.1/CAM** for the
3092 implementation itself, as well as **FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP** and
3093 **FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP**, the latter supporting the PACE protocol.

3094 **OT.Chip_Auth_Proof_AA** is a newly introduced security objective that aims to ensure the
3095 authenticity of the electronic document's chip by the Active Authentication protocol, in
3096 particular in the context of an ePassport Application. This is supported by **FCS_CKM.1/AA** for
3097 cryptographic key generation, and **FIA_API.1/AA**, **FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP** and
3098 **FCS_COP.1/AA** for the implementation itself. The **FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP**

3099 ensures the authenticity of the TOE, because it restricts the ability to read the Active
3100 Authentication private key to none. These do not affect the discussion of the rationale of [5].

3101 The OT.AC_Pers enforce that all TSF data can be written by authorized Personalisation Agent
3102 only and this is supported by **FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key** for the Active Authentication key
3103 pair.

3104 **FDP_ACF.1/TRM** unifies the access control SFPs of **FDP_ACF.1/TRM_EAC2PP** and
3105 **FDP_ACF.1/TRM_EAC1PP**. Both access control SFPs however are maintained w.r.t.
3106 sensitive EAC1-protected data and EAC2-protected data. Thus the discussion of the rationale
3107 of [5] and [6] remains unaffected.

3108 **FMT_SMR.1/EAC1PP** and **FMT_SMR.1/EAC2PP** have been unified to FMT_SMR.1 by
3109 adding additional roles. For all security objectives affected, FMT_SMR.1 supports related roles
3110 analogously as in the discussion of the rationales of [5] and [6].

3111 **FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP** and **FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP** together define all protected data. Since all
3112 previous data are included, the discussion of the rationales of [5] and [6] is not affected.

3113 The security objective **OT.CA2** aims at enabling verification of the authenticity of the TOE as
3114 a whole device. This objective is mainly achieved as described in [6]. The secure generation
3115 of cryptography key pair is ensured by **FCS_CKM.1/CA2**.

3116 The security objective **OT.RI_EAC2** aims at providing a way to pseudonymously identify an
3117 electronic document holder without granting a terminal read access to sensitive user data. This
3118 objective is mainly achieved as described in [6]. The secure generation of cryptography key
3119 pair is ensured by **FCS_CKM.1/RI**.

3120 **6.3.2. Rationale for SFR's Dependencies**

3121 The dependency analysis for the security functional requirements shows that the basis for
3122 mutual support and internal consistency between all defined functional requirements is
3123 satisfied. All dependencies between the chosen functional components are analyzed, and non-
3124 dissolved dependencies are appropriately explained.

3125 The dependency analysis has directly been made within the description of each SFR in Section
3126 6.1 above. All dependencies being expected by [2] and by extended components definition in
3127 Chapter 5 are either fulfilled, or their non-fulfillment is justified.

3128 **6.3.3. Security Assurance Requirements Rationale**

3129 The current assurance package was chosen based on the predefined assurance package
3130 EAL5. This package permits a developer to gain maximum assurance from positive security
3131 engineering based on good commercial development practices which, through rigorous, do not
3132 require substantial specialist knowledge, skills, and other resources. EAL5 is the highest level,
3133 at which it is likely to retrofit to an existing product line in an economically feasible way. EAL5
3134 is applicable in those circumstances where developers or users require a moderate to high
3135 level of independently assured security in conventional commodity TOEs and are prepared to
3136 incur additional security specific engineering costs.

3137 The selection of the component ALC_DVS.2 provides a higher assurance of the security of the
3138 electronic document's development and manufacturing, especially for the secure handling of
3139 sensitive material.

3140 The selection of the component AVA_VAN.5 provides a higher assurance than the predefined
3141 EAL5 package, namely requiring a vulnerability analysis to assess the resistance to
3142 penetration attacks performed by an attacker possessing a high attack potential (see also
3143 Table 3, entry 'Attacker'). This decision represents a part of the conscious security policy for
3144 the electronic document required by the electronic document issuer and reflected by the
3145 current ST.

3146 The set of assurance requirements being part of EAL5 fulfills all dependencies a priori. The
3147 augmentation of EAL5 chosen comprises the following assurance components: ALC_DVS.2
3148 and AVA_VAN.5. For these additional assurance components, all dependencies are met or
3149 exceeded in the EAL5 assurance package. Below we list only those assurance requirements
3150 that are additional to EAL5.

3151 ALC_DVS.2

3152 Dependencies:

3153 None

3154 AVA_VAN.5

3155 Dependencies:

3156 ADV_ARC.1, ADV_FSP.4, ADV_TDS.3, ADV_IMP.1, AGD_OPE.1, AGD_PRE.1,
3157 ATE_DPT.1

3158 fulfilled by ADV_ARC.1, ADV_FSP.4, ADV_TDS.3, ADV_IMP.1, AGD_OPE.1,
3159 AGD_PRE.1, ATE_DPT.2

3160 **6.3.4. Security Requirements - Internal Consistency**

3161 The following part of the security requirements rationale shows that the set of security
3162 requirements for the TOE consisting of the security functional requirements (SFRs) and the
3163 security assurance requirements (SARs) are internally consistent. The analysis of the TOE's
3164 security requirements with regard to their mutual support and internal consistency
3165 demonstrates:

3166 The dependency analysis in Section 6.3.2 for the security functional requirements shows that
3167 the basis for internal consistency between all defined functional requirements is satisfied. All
3168 dependencies between the chosen functional components are analyzed and non-satisfied
3169 dependencies are appropriately justified.

3170 All subjects and objects addressed by more than one SFR are also treated in a consistent way:
3171 the SFRs impacting them do not require any contradictory property or behavior of these
3172 'shared' items.

3173 The assurance package EAL5 is a predefined set of internally consistent assurance
3174 requirements. The dependency analysis for the sensitive assurance components in Section
3175 6.3.3 shows that the assurance requirements are internally consistent as all (additional)
3176 dependencies are satisfied and no inconsistency appears.

3177 Inconsistency between functional and assurance requirements can only arise due to
3178 functional-assurance dependencies not being met. As shown in Section 6.3.2 and Section
3179 6.3.3, the chosen assurance components are adequate for the functionality of the TOE. Hence,
3180 there are no inconsistencies between the goals of these two groups of security requirements.

3181 **7. TOE SUMMARY SPECIFICATION**

3182 **7.1.TOE Security Functions**

3183 **7.1.1. TSF.AccessControl**

3184 The TOE enforces access control to access User Data and TSF-data and maintains different
3185 security roles.

SFR	Description
FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP	The TSF responsible to suspend the reference value of PIN.
FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP	The TSF responsible to block the reference value of PIN.
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP	The TSF responsible to restrict other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user before the user identification.
FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	The TSF responsible to restrict other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user before the user identification.
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP	The TSF responsible to restrict other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user before the user authentication.
FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	The TSF responsible to restrict other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user before the user authentication.
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP	The TSF responsible to delay each following authentication attempt.
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	The TSF responsible to restrict other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user before the user identification.
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	The TSF responsible to restrict other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user before the user authentication.
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP.
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to enforce the Access Control SFP.
FDP_ACF.1/TRM	This TSF responsible to enforce the Access Control SFP.
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to write certain objects.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to update certain objects.
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to modify the current date.
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to write certain objects.
FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to create or load the Chip Authentication private key(s) (SKPICC) and the Restricted Identification Private Key(s).
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to read certain objects.
FMT_SMR.1	This TSF responsible to maintain the Manufacturer, Personalization Agent, Country Verifying Certification Authority (CVCA), Document Verifier (DV), Terminal, PACE Terminal, EAC2 terminal, if the eID, ePassport

	are active, EAC1 terminal, if the ePassport application is active, Electronic Document Holder roles.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to shall restrict the ability to write certain objects.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to update certain objects.
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to modify the current date.
FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to create, load the Chip Authentication Private Key.
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to write the Document Security Object (SOD).
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to read certain objects.
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to create or load the Active Authentication Private Key.

3186 **7.1.2. TSF.Authenticate**

3187 The TOE supports several authentication mechanism in order to authenticate the Users,
3188 Terminals and to prove the genuineness of the electronic document.

3189 The supported mechanism and protocols are based on ICAO and BSI standards [7], [8], [17],
3190 [18] and [19].

3191 Supported authentication mechanism:

- 3192 • Password Authenticated Connection Establishment (PACE) [7], [17], [18].
- 3193 o Generic Mapping
- 3194 o Chip Authentication Mapping
- 3195 • Active Authentication [7]
- 3196 • Chip Authentication version 1 [17]
- 3197 • Terminal Authentication version 1 [17]
- 3198 • Chip Authentication version 2 [18]
- 3199 • Terminal Authentication version 2 [18]
- 3200 • Restricted Identification [18]
- 3201 • Symmetric Authentication (Device authentication) [31]
- 3202 • Symmetric Role Authentication [31]
- 3203 • User Verification [31]

SFR	Description
FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for Chip Authentication v2.
FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for Restricted Identification.
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE and Terminal Authentication v2.
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE, Terminal Authentication v2 and Symmetric Authentication.
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE, Terminal Authentication v2, Chip Authentication v2 and Symmetric Authentication.

FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for Chip Authentication v2.
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for PACE, Chip Authentication v1 and Chip Authentication Mapping (PACE-CAM).
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for PACE, Chip Authentication v1, Terminal Authentication v1 and Chip Authentication Mapping (PACE-CAM).
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for PACE, Symmetric Authentication, Terminal Authentication v1 and Active Authentication.
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for PACE, Chip Authentication Mapping (PACE-CAM), Symmetric Authentication, Terminal Authentication v1.
FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for Chip Authentication v1
FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for Chip Authentication v1
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	This TSF responsible for Chip Authentication Mapping
FIA_API.1/AA	This TSF responsible for Active Authentication
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP.
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FDP_ACF.1/TRM	This TSF responsible for Terminal Authentication and PACE.
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for PACE
FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for Chip Authentication v2
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for PACE.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of the Personalisation Agent.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the authentication of Country Verifying Certification Authority.
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the authentication of CVCA, DV and the EAC2 Terminal
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of Personalization Agent.
FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of the Personalisation Agent.
FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of the Personalisation Agent.
FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of Document Holder and the EAC2 Terminal (with Terminal Authorisation level for PIN management).
FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of Document Holder
FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of Document Holder and the EAC2 Terminal (with Terminal Authorisation level for PIN management).
FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of the EAC2 Terminal (with Terminal Authorisation level for PIN management).
FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the Terminal Authentication v2.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of Personalization Agent.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of Country Verifying Certification Authority.
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to equivalent to FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP.
FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for This TSF responsible for authentication of Personalization Agent or the Manufacturer.

FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for authentication of Personalization Agent.
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	This TSF responsible for authentication of Personalization Agent.
FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for the Terminal Authentication v2.

3204

7.1.3. TSF.SecureManagement

3205

The TOE enforces the secure management of the security attributes, data and functions.

3206

Furthermore the TOE restricts the available commands in each TOE life-cycle phase.

SFR	Description
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether the Personalisation Agent is authenticated, and it has right to write initial CVCA Public Key, meta-data of the initial CVCA Certificate and initial Current Date.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether the Country Verifying Certification Authority is authenticated, and it has right to update CVCA Public Key (PKCVCA) and meta-data of the CVCA Certificate.
FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to provide part of the security functions.
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a CVCA, Document Verifier, or an EAC2 terminal is authenticated and it has right to modify Current Date.
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a Personalisation Agent is authenticated, and it has right to write the card/chip security object(s) (SO _C) and the document Security Object (SO _D).
FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a Personalisation Agent is authenticated, and it has right to create or load the Chip Authentication private key(s) (SKPICC) and the Restricted Identification Private Key(s).
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to read certain objects.
FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a Personalisation Agent is authenticated, and it has right to write the initial PIN and PUK
FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether an Electronic Document Holder is authenticated with PUK or a Terminal with Terminal Authorisation level for PIN management is authenticated and it has right to change the blocked PIN.
FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether an Electronic Document Holder is authenticated, and it has right to resume the suspended PIN.
FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether an Electronic Document Holder is authenticated with PUK or a Terminal with Terminal Authorisation level for PIN management is authenticated and it has right to unblock the blocked PIN.
FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a Terminal with Terminal Authorisation level for PIN management is authenticated and it has right to activate or deactivate the PIN.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether the Personalisation Agent is authenticated, and it has right

	to write initial Country Verifying Certification Authority Public Key, initial Country Verifying Certification Authority Certificate, initial Current Date.
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether the Country Verifying Certification Authority is authenticated, and it has right to update Country Verifying Certification Authority Public Key, Country Verifying Certification Authority Certificate.
FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to provide part of the security functions.
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to equivalent to FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP.
FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a Personalisation Agent or Manufacturer is authenticated, and it has right to create or load the Chip Authentication private key.
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a Personalisation Agent is authenticated, and it has right to write the document Security Object (SOD).
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to read cryptographic keys.
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	This TSF responsible to evaluate whether a Personalisation Agent is authenticated, and it has right to create or load the Active Authentication Private Key.

3207 **7.1.4. TSF.CryptoKey**

3208 The TOE uses several cryptographic services such as digital signature creation and
 3209 verification, asymmetric and symmetric cryptography, random number generation and
 3210 complete key management.

3211 Furthermore TSF.CryptoKey provides the secure messaging for the TOE.

SFR	Description
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of key agreement for PACE.
FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of hash generation.
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of digital signature verification.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging – encryption and decryption.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging – message authentication code.
FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic key destruction.
FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of random number generation.
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of key agreement for PACE.
FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging – encryption and decryption.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging – message authentication code.
FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP.
FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of key agreement for Chip Authentication v1.
FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging – encryption and decryption.

FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of digital signature verification.
FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging – message authentication code.
FCS_CKM.1/CA2	This TSF responsible the Applet part of Chip Authentication version 2 Key pair(s) generation.
FCS_CKM.1/RI	This TSF responsible the Applet part of Restricted Identification Key pair (s) generation.
FCS_CKM.1/AA	This TSF responsible the Applet part of Active Authentication Key Pair generation.
FCS_COP.1/AA	This TSF responsible the Applet part of digital signature generation.
FCS_CKM.1/CAM	This TSF responsible the Applet part of PACE-CAM protocol implementation.
FCS_COP.1/CAM	This TSF responsible the Applet part of PACE-CAM protocol implementation.
FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication v2.
FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for Restricted Identification.
FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication v1.
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication Mapping.
FIA_API.1/AA	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for Active Authentication.
FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to call the Platform functionalities to destroy cryptographic keys.
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging.
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of secure messaging.
FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to call the Platform functionalities to destroy cryptographic keys.
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP.
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP.
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for trusted channel.
FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for trusted channel.
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Applet part of cryptographic operation for trusted channel.

3212 **7.1.5. TSF.AppletParametersSign**

3213 The TOE enforces the integrity of itself in each life cycle phases.

SFR	Description
FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for initial start-up, periodically during normal operation testing.
FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP.

3214 **7.1.6. TSF.Platform**

3215 The TOE relies on the certified functions and services of the Platform. This TSF is collection
3216 of those SFRs, which are uses these functions and services.

SFR	Description
-----	-------------

FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of key agreement for PACE.
FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of hash generation.
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of digital signature verification.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging – encryption and decryption.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging – message authentication code.
FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of cryptographic key destruction.
FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of random number generation.
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of key agreement for PACE.
FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging – encryption and decryption.
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging – message authentication code.
FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP.
FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of key agreement for Chip Authentication v1.
FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging – encryption and decryption.
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of digital signature verification.
FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging – message authentication code.
FCS_CKM.1/CA2	This TSF responsible the Platform part of Chip Authentication version 2 Key pair(s) generation.
FCS_CKM.1/RI	This TSF responsible the Platform part of Restricted Identification Key pair(s) generation.
FCS_CKM.1/AA	This TSF responsible the Platform part of Active Authentication Key Pair generation.
FCS_COP.1/AA	This TSF responsible the Platform part of digital signature generation.
FCS_CKM.1/CAM	This TSF responsible the Platform part of PACE-CAM protocol implementation.
FCS_COP.1/CAM	This TSF responsible the Platform part of PACE-CAM protocol implementation.
FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication v2.
FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of cryptographic operation for Restricted Identification.
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for the identifier data of the TOE.
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for fresh random numbers for PACE, Terminal Authentication v2 and Symmetric Authentication.
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for Platform part of cryptographic operation for PACE, Terminal Authentication v2, Chip Authentication v2 and Symmetric Authentication.
FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for Platform part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication v2.

FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for Platform part of cryptographic operation for PACE.
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for Platform part of cryptographic operation for PACE, Symmetric Authentication, Terminal Authentication v1 and Active Authentication.
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for Platform part of cryptographic operation for PACE, Chip Authentication Mapping (PACE-CAM), Symmetric Authentication, Terminal Authentication v1.
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for Platform part of cryptographic operation for PACE.
FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP	This TSF responsible for Platform part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication v1
FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication v1.
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	This TSF responsible the Platform part of cryptographic operation for Chip Authentication Mapping.
FIA_API.1/AA	This TSF responsible the Platform part of cryptographic operation for Active Authentication.
FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to make unavailable any cryptographic data used in runtime cryptographic computations.
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging.
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible the Platform part of secure messaging.
FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to make unavailable any cryptographic data used in runtime cryptographic computations.
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP.
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP.
FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to store the Initialisation and Pre-Personalisation Data in the audit records
FAU_SAS.1/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP.
FMT_SMR.1	This TSF responsible to provide part of the security roles.
FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to limit its capabilities to enforce the policy as described in the SFR.
FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to limit its availability to enforce the policy as described in the SFR.
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to write the Initialisation Data and Pre-personalisation Data to the Manufacturer.
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to restrict the ability to read out the Initialisation Data and the Pre-personalisation Data to the Personalisation Agent.
FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to provide part of the security functions.
FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP	This TSF responsible to provide part of the security functions.
FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP.
FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP.
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP.
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC1PP	Equivalent to FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP.
FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP	This TSF ensures that during command execution there are no usable variations in power consumption (measurable at e. g. electrical contacts) or timing (measurable at e. g. electrical contacts) that might disclose cryptographic keys.

FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible to preserve a secure state when the failures occur.
FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP	This TSF responsible for the integrity of stored TSF executable code.
FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP	This TSF ensures resistance to physical attack.
FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP.
FPT_FLS.1/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP.
FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP	Equivalent to FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP
FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP	This TSF ensures that during command execution there are no usable variations in power consumption (measurable at e. g. electrical contacts) or timing (measurable at e. g. electrical contacts) that might disclose cryptographic keys.

3217 **7.2.Assurance Measures**

3218 This section describes the Assurance Measures fulfilling the requirements listed in section 6.2.

3219 The following table lists the Assurance measures and references the corresponding
3220 documents describing the measures.

Assurance measures	Description
AM_ADV	The representing of the TSF is described in the documentation for functional specification, in the documentation for TOE design, in the security architecture description and in the documentation for implementation representation.
AM_AGD	The guidance documentation is described in the User's Guide documentation [23] and the Administrator's Guide documentation [22].
AM_ALC	The life-cycle support of the TOE during its development and maintenance is described in the life-cycle documentation including configuration management, delivery procedures, development security as well as development tools.
AM_ATE	The testing of the TOE is described in the test documentation.
AM_AVA	The vulnerability assessment for the TOE is described in the vulnerability analysis documentation.

Table 12 Assurance measures and corresponding documents

3221

3222 **7.3.Fulfillment of the SFRs**

3223 The following table shows the mapping of the SFRs to security functions of the TOE:

TOE SFR / Security Function	Security Functions					
	T.SF.AccessControl	T.SF.Authenticate	T.SF.SecureManagement	T.SF.CryptoKey	T.SF.AppletParametersSign	T.SF.Platform
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/SHA_EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.4/EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_RND.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/DH_PACE_EAC1P	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.4/EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_ENC_EAC1P	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE_MAC_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_RND.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/CA_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/CA_ENC_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/SIG_VER_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/CA_MAC_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/CA2	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/RI	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/AA	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/AA	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_CKM.1/CAM	-	-	-	X	-	X
FCS_COP.1/CAM	-	-	-	X	-	X
FIA_AFL.1/Suspend_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X	-	-	-	-
FIA_AFL.1/Block_PIN_EAC2PP	X	X	-	-	-	-
FIA_API.1/CA_EAC2PP	-	X	-	X	-	X
FIA_API.1/RI_EAC2PP	-	X	-	X	-	X
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UID.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	X	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.1/EAC2_Terminal_EAC2PP	X	X	-	-	-	X

TOE SFR / Security Function	Security Target					
	TSF.AccessControl	TSF.Authenticate	TSF.SecureManagement	TSF.CryptoKey	TSF.AppletParametersSign	TSF.Platform
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.6/CA_EAC2PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC2PP	X	X	-	-	-	-
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UID.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.4/PACE_EAC1PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.5/PACE_EAC1PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.6/PACE_EAC1PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_UAU.6/EAC_EAC1PP	-	X	-	-	-	X
FIA_API.1/EAC1PP	-	X	-	X	-	X
FIA_API.1/PACE_CAM	-	X	-	X	-	X
FIA_API.1/AA	-	X	-	X	-	X
FIA_AFL.1/PACE_EAC1PP	X	X	-	-	-	-
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC2PP	X	-	-	-	-	-
FDP_ACF.1/TRM	X	X	-	-	-	-
FDP_RIP.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC2PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FDP_ACC.1/TRM_EAC1PP	X	-	-	-	-	-
FDP_RIP.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FDP_UCT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FDP_UIT.1/TRM_EAC1PP	-	-	-	X	-	X
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC2PP	-	X	-	X	-	-
FTP_ITC.1/CA_EAC2PP	-	X	-	X	-	-
FTP_ITC.1/PACE_EAC1PP	-	X	-	X	-	-
FAU_SAS.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FAU_SAS.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC2PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC2PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_SMF.1/EAC2PP	-	-	X	-	-	X
FMT_SMR.1	X	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC2PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC2PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/SK_PICC_EAC2PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC2PP	X	-	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/Initialize_PIN_EAC2PP	-	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/Change_PIN_EAC2PP	-	X	X	-	-	-

TOE SFR / Security Function	Security Target					
	TSF.AccessControl	TSF.Authenticate	TSF.SecureManagement	TSF.CryptoKey	TSF.AppletParametersSign	TSF.Platform
FMT_MTD.1/Resume_PIN_EAC2 PP	-	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/Unblock_PIN_EAC 2PP	-	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/Activate_PIN_EAC2 PP	-	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.3/EAC2PP	-	X	-	-	-	-
FMT_LIM.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_LIM.2/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_SMF.1/EAC1PP	-	-	X	-	-	X
FMT_LIM.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_LIM.2/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_ENA_EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/INI_DIS_EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_INI_EAC1PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/CVCA_UPD_EAC1 PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/DATE_EAC1PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/CAPK_EAC1PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/PA_EAC1PP	X	X	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/KEY_READ_EAC1P P	X	-	X	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.3/EAC1PP	-	X	-	-	-	-
FMT_MTD.1/AA_Private_Key	X	X	X	-	-	-
FPT_EMS.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FPT_FLS.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FPT_TST.1/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	X	X
FPT_PHP.3/EAC2PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FPT_TST.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	X	X
FPT_FLS.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FPT_PHP.3/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X
FPT_EMS.1/EAC1PP	-	-	-	-	-	X

3224 **7.4. Correspondence of SFR and TOE mechanisms**

3225 Each TOE security functional requirement is implemented by at least one TOE mechanism. In
 3226 section 7.1 the implementing of the TOE security functional requirement is described in form
 3227 of the TOE mechanism.

3228 **8. GLOSSARY AND ABBREVIATIONS**

3229 For Glossary and Acronyms please refer to the corresponding section of [6].

3230 9. BIBLIOGRAPHY

- [1] Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 1: Introduction and General Model; CCMB-2017-04-001, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017
- [2] Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 2: Security Functional Components; CCMB-2017-04-002, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017
- [3] Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 3: Security Assurance Requirements; CCMB-2017-04-003, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017
- [4] Common Methodology for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Evaluation Methodology; CCMB- 2017-04-004, Version 3.1, Revision 5, April 2017
- [5] BSI: Common Criteria Protection Profile - Machine Readable Travel Document with „ICAO Application“, Extended Access Control with PACE (EAC PP), BSI-CC-PP-0056-V2-2012 v1.3.2 (5. December 2012)
- [6] BSI: Common Criteria Protection Profile - ID-Card implementing Extended Access Control 2 as defined in BSI TR-03110, BSI-CC-PP-0086-2015 v1.01 (May 20th, 2015)
- [7] ICAO: Technical Report: Supplemental Access Control for Machine Readable Travel Documents, Version - 1.01, 11. November 2010.
- [8] ICAO: ICAO Doc 9303, Part 1: Machine Readable Passports, Volume 2: Specifications for Electronically Enabled Passports with Biometric Identification Capability, Sixth Edition – 2006
- [9] ICAO: ICAO Doc 9303 - Machine Readable Travel Documents, 7th edition, 2015
- [10] Security IC Platform Protection Profile Version 1.0, June 2007; registered and certified by BSI (Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik) under the reference BSI-PP-0035-2007
- [11] ISO/IEC 14443 Identification cards — Contactless integrated circuit cards,
- [12] ISO/IEC 7816-4:2013 Identification cards — Integrated circuit cards — Part 4: Organization, security and commands for interchange,
- [13] BSI: Common Criteria Protection Profile - Machine Readable Travel Document using Standard Inspection Procedure with PACE (PACE PP), BSI-CC-PP-0068-V2-2011
- [14] EN 419211-2:2013 — Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 2: Device with key generation
- [15] EN 419211-4:2013 — Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 4: Extension for device with key generation and trusted channel to certificate generation application

- [16] EN 419211-5:2013 - Protection profiles for secure signature creation device - Part 5: Extension for device with key generation and trusted channel to signature creation application
- [17] BSI: TR-03110-1 - Advanced Security Mechanisms for Machine Readable Travel Documents. Part 1 - eMRTDs with BAC/PACEv2 and EACv1, v2.10 (20. March 2012)
- [18] BSI: TR-03110-2 - Advanced Security Mechanisms for Machine Readable Travel Documents and eIDAS token. Part 2 – Protocols for electronic IDentification, Authentication and trust Services (eIDAS) Version 2.21, 21. December 2016
- [19] BSI: TR-03110-3 - Advanced Security Mechanisms for Machine Readable Travel Documents and eIDAS token. Part 3 - Common Specifications v2.21 (21. December 2016)
- [20] BSI: TR-03110-3 - Advanced Security Mechanisms for Machine Readable Travel Documents and eIDAS token. Part 4 – Applications and Document Profiles V2.21, 21. December 2016
- [21] BSI: Common Criteria Protection Profile - Machine-Readable Electronic Documents based on BSI TR-03110 for Official Use [MR.ED-PP], BSI-CC-PP-0087 version 1.01, May 20th, 2015
- [22] IDentity Applet Suite v4.0 Administrator's Guide
- [23] IDentity Applet Suite v4.0 User's Guide
- [24] JCOP 4.5 P71 Security Target Lite, Rev. 2.9, 5 September 2025
- [25] JCOP 4.5 P71, User manual for JCOP 4.5 P71, User Guidance and Administrator Manual, NXP Semiconductors, Rev. 2.2 – 2025-06-05.
- [26] Supporting Document Mandatory Technical Document Composite product evaluation for Smart Cards and similar devices; Version 1.5.1, May 2018
- [27] BSI: TR 03111: Elliptic Curve Cryptography, Version 2.0, 28. June 2012.
- [28] RSA Laboratories: PKCS #3: Diffie-Hellman Key-Agreement Standard, An RSA Laboratories Technical Note, Version 1.4, Revised November 1, 1993
- [29] National Institute of Standards and Technology: FIPS PUB 180-4: Secure hash standard, March 2012.
- [30] Published by Oracle. Java Card 3 Platform, Application Programming Interface, Classic Edition, Version 3.0.5., May 2015.
- [31] European card for e-Services and National e-ID applications, IAS ECC European Citizen Card, Technical Specifications, Revisions 1.0.1.
- [32] Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik, Technische Richtlinie - Kryptographische Verfahren: Empfehlungen und Schlüssellängen, 09. Januar 2013, BSI-TR02102.

- [33] Protection Profile for ePassport IC with SAC (BAC+PACE) and Active Authentication, version 1.0, March 8,2016, Passport Division, Consular Affairs Bureau, Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Japan
- [34] Protection Profile for ePassport IC with SAC (PACE) and Active Authentication, version 1.0, March 8,2016, Passport Division, Consular Affairs Bureau, Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Japan
- [35] NXP Secure Smart Card Controller N7122 with IC Dedicated Software and Crypto Library (R1/R2/R3) Security Target, Rev. 2.0, 4 August 2025
- [36] Bundesamt fuer Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik. Anwendungshinweise und Interpretationen zum Schema, AIS 20: Funktionalitaetsklassen und Evaluationsmethodologie fuer deterministische Zufallszahlengeneratoren, Version 2.1, 2.12.2011.